ELECRAFT K2

160-10 Meter SSB/CW Transceiver

Owner's Manual

Revision C, April 19, 2000

Elecraft • www.elecraft.com P.O. Box 69 • Aptos, CA 95001-0069 (831) 662-8345 • Fax: (831) 662-0830

Table of Contents

1. Introduction

The Elecraft K2 is a high-performance, synthesized, CW/SSB transceiver that covers all HF bands. It is a true dual-purpose transceiver, combining the operating features you'd expect in a home-station rig with the small size and weight of a rugged, go-anywhere portable. The K2 is also the first transceiver to offer these features in kit form.

The basic K2 operates on 80-10 meter CW, with adjustable power output from 0.1 to over 10 watts. You can also customize your K2 by choosing from a wide range of internal options:

- SSB adapter
- 160-m module with receive antenna switch
- Noise blanker
- Automatic antenna tuner
- 2.9-Ah rechargeable battery

Additional options are planned (see page 108). Also, a companion enclosure the same size and style as the K2 is available for those who wish to build their own matching station accessories (model EC2).

The K2 is an intermediate-to-advanced kit, yet you'll be pleasantly surprised at how uncomplicated it is to build. All of the RF (radio-frequency) circuitry is contained on a single board, while two plug-in modules provide user interface (UI) and control functions. Wiring is minimal, unlike traditional kits which depend on complex wiring harnesses.

A unique feature of the K2 is that it provides its own built-in test equipment, including a digital voltmeter, ammeter, wattmeter, and frequency counter. These circuits are completed early in assembly, so the functions are ready to be used when you begin construction and alignment of the RF board. We also provide complete troubleshooting information, including detailed signal tracing procedures for both receiver and transmitter.

In addition to this owner's manual, you'll find extensive support for the K2 on our website, www.elecraft.com. Among the available materials are manual updates, application notes, photographs, and information on new products. There's also an e-mail forum; sign-up is available from the web page. It's a great way to seek advice from the K2's designers and your fellow builders, or to tell us about your first QSO using the K2.

We'd like to thank you for choosing the K2 transceiver, and hope it meets your expectations for operation both at home and in the field.

Wayne Burdick, N6KR
Eric Swartz, WA6HHQ

Customer Service Information

Technical Assistance

If you have difficulty with kit construction, operation, or troubleshooting, we're here to help. You may be able to save time by first consulting our web site, www.elecraft.com, or by posting your question on the Elecraft e-mail forum, elecraft@qth.net.

Telephone assistance is available from 9 A.M. to 5 P.M. Pacific time (weekdays only) at 831-662-8345. You can also send e-mail to support@elecraft.com. *Please use e-mail, rather than call, when possible since this gives us a written record of the details of your problem.*

Repair Service

If necessary, you may return your completed kit to us for repair. Contact Elecraft before mailing your kit to obtain current information on repair fees. (Kits that have been soldered using acid core solder, water-soluble flux solder, or other corrosive or conductive fluxes or solvents cannot be accepted for repair.)

The following information should be provided to expedite repair: your name, address, and phone number; your e-mail address (if applicable); and a complete description of the problem.

Shipping: First, seal the unit in a plastic bag to protect the finish from dust and abrasion. Use a sturdy packing carton with 3" or more of foam or shredded paper on all sides. Seal the package with reinforced tape. (Neither Elecraft nor the carrier will accept liability for damage due to improper packaging.) Cover the "to" address label with clear tape. Ship the equipment to:

Elecraft
8050 Soquel Drive, Suite D
Aptos, California 95003

Elecraft's 1-Year Limited Warranty

This warranty is effective as of the date of first consumer purchase. Before requesting warranty service, you should complete the assembly, carefully following all instructions in the manual.

What is covered: During the first year after date of purchase, Elecraft will replace defective parts free of charge (post-paid). We will also correct any malfunction caused by defective parts and materials. You must send the unit at your expense to Elecraft, but we will pay return shipping.

What is not covered: This warranty does not cover correction of assembly errors or misalignment; repair of damage caused by misuse, negligence, or builder modifications; or any performance malfunctions involving non-Elecraft accessory equipment. *The use of acid-core solder, water-soluble flux solder, or any corrosive or conductive flux or solvent will void this warranty in its entirety.* Also not covered is reimbursement for loss of use, inconvenience, customer assembly or alignment time, or cost of unauthorized service.

Limitation of incidental or consequential damages: This warranty does not extend to non-Elecraft equipment or components used in conjunction with our products. *Any such repair or replacement is the responsibility of the customer. Elecraft will not be liable for any special, indirect, incidental or consequential damages, including but not limited to any loss of business or profits.*

2. Specifications

All measurements were made using a 14.0 V supply and 50-ohm load at the antenna. Numeric values are typical; your results will be somewhat different. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

General

Size		
	Cabinet	3.0" H x 7.9" W x 8.3" D (7.5 x 20 x 21 cm)
	Overall	3.4" H x 7.9" W x 9.9" D (8.5 x 20 x 25 cm)
Weight		3.3 lbs. (1.5 kg), excluding options
Supply voltage		9 to 15 VDC; reverse-polarity protection; internal self-resetting fuse
Current drain,		
	Receive	100-150 mA in minimum-current configuration; 150-250 mA typical
	Transmit[1]	2.0 A typical at 10 watts; programmable current limiting
Frequency control		PLL synthesizer w/single VCO covering 6.7-24 MHz in 9 bands; fine steps via DAC-tuned reference

[1] Current varies with band, supply voltage, configuration, and load impedance. We recommend a minimum 3.5-amp power supply.

Frequency ranges,[2] MHz		
	Basic kit	3.5-4.0, 7.0-7.3, 10.0-10.2, 14.0-14.5, 18.0-18.2, 21.0-21.6, 24.8-25.0, 28.0-28.8 (No transmit, 26.000-27.999)
	160 m (opt.)	1.8-2.0
VFO		
	Stability	< 100 Hz total drift typ. from cold start at 25° C
	Accuracy[3]	+/- 30 Hz over a 500 kHz range (typ) when calibrated
	Resolution	10 Hz
	Tuning steps	10 Hz, 50 Hz, and 1000 Hz
	Memories	20 (10 assigned to 160-10 m Bands; 10 general-purpose)
RIT/XIT range		+/- 0.6 or +/- 1.2 kHz (selectable); 10 Hz steps

[2] The K2 can receive well outside the ham bands, but this extended range is not specified or guaranteed

[3] See Frequency Calibration Techniques (Operation section, under Advanced Operating Features).

Transmitter

Power output	<0.5 W to >10 W (typ.); power setting resolution 0.1 W, accuracy 10% @ 5 W
Duty cycle	5 W, 100%; 10 W, 50%
Spurious products	-40 dB or better @ 10 W (-50typ)
Harmonic content	-45 dB or better @ 10 W (-55typ)
Load tolerance	2:1 or better SWR recommended; will survive operation into high SWR
T-R delay	approx. 10 ms-2.5 sec, adjustable
External keying	70 WPM max.
CW sidetone	400-800 Hz, programmable in 10 Hz steps
CW T-R offset	400-800 Hz (tracks sidetone pitch)

Keyer

Keying modes	Iambic A and B
Speed range	9 - 50 WPM
Message memory	9 buffers of 153 bytes each
Message handling	1-level chaining; auto-repeat (0 - 255 s interval)

Receiver

	Preamp On	**Preamp Off**
Sensitivity (MDS)	-135 dBm	-130 dBm
3rd-order intercept	0 to +7.5[4]	+10
2nd-order intercept	+70	+70
Dynamic range,		
Blocking	125 dB	133 dB
Two-tone	96	97

I.F.	4.915 MHz (single conversion)
Selectivity,	
CW	7-pole variable-bandwidth crystal filter, approx. 200-2000 Hz
SSB[5]	7-pole fixed-bandwidth crystal filter, 2.2 kHz typ.
Audio output	1 watt max. into 4-ohm load
Speaker	internal: 4 ohm, 3 W; Rear-panel jack for external speaker
Headphones	4 - 32 ohms, stereo or mono

[4] Varies with band.
[5] With optional SSB adapter. Other CW and SSB fixed crystal filter options may be available

3. Preparation for Assembly

Overview of the Kit

The K2 uses modular construction, both physically and electrically. This concept extends to the chassis (Figure 3-1). Any chassis element can be removed during assembly or troubleshooting. (Also see photos in Appendix D.)

As shown in Figure 3-2, there are three printed circuit boards (PCBs) in the basic K2 kit: the Front Panel board, Control Board, and RF board.

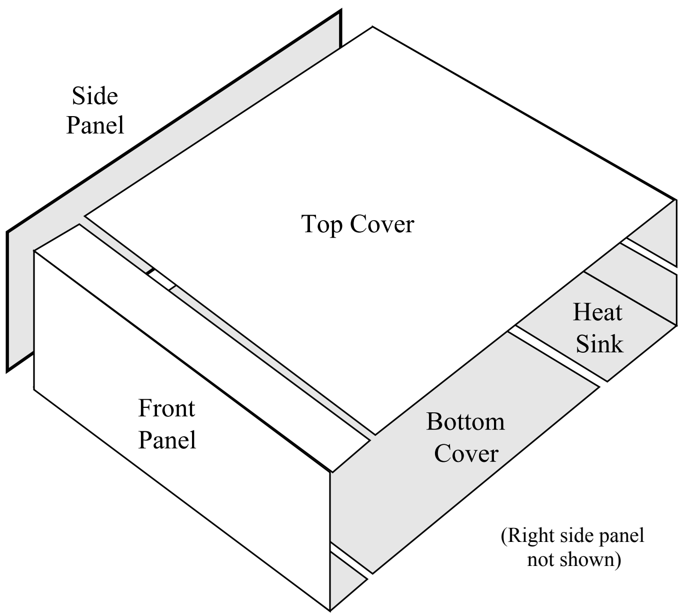


Figure 3-1

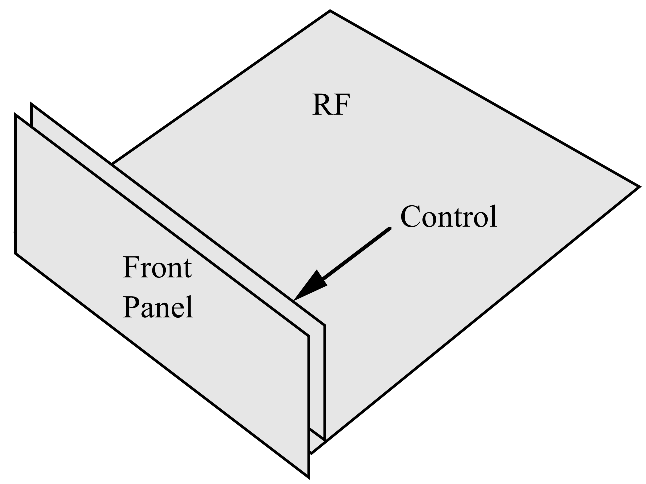


Figure 3-2

Board-to-board Connectors

The circuit boards in the K2 are interconnected using *board-to-board* connectors, which eliminates nearly all hand wiring. Gold-plated contacts are used on these connectors for reliability and corrosion resistance.

Figure 3-3 shows a side view of the PC boards and board-to-board connectors. As can be seen in the drawing, the Front Panel board has a connector **J1** which mates with right-angle connector **P1** on the RF board. Similarly, right-angle connector **P1** on the Control Board mates with **J6** on the RF board. (Not shown in this drawing are two additional right-angle connectors on the Control board, P2 and P3, which mate with J7 and J8 on the RF board.)

These multi-pin connectors are very difficult to remove once soldered in place. Refer to Figure 3-3 during assembly to make sure you have each connector placed correctly before soldering.

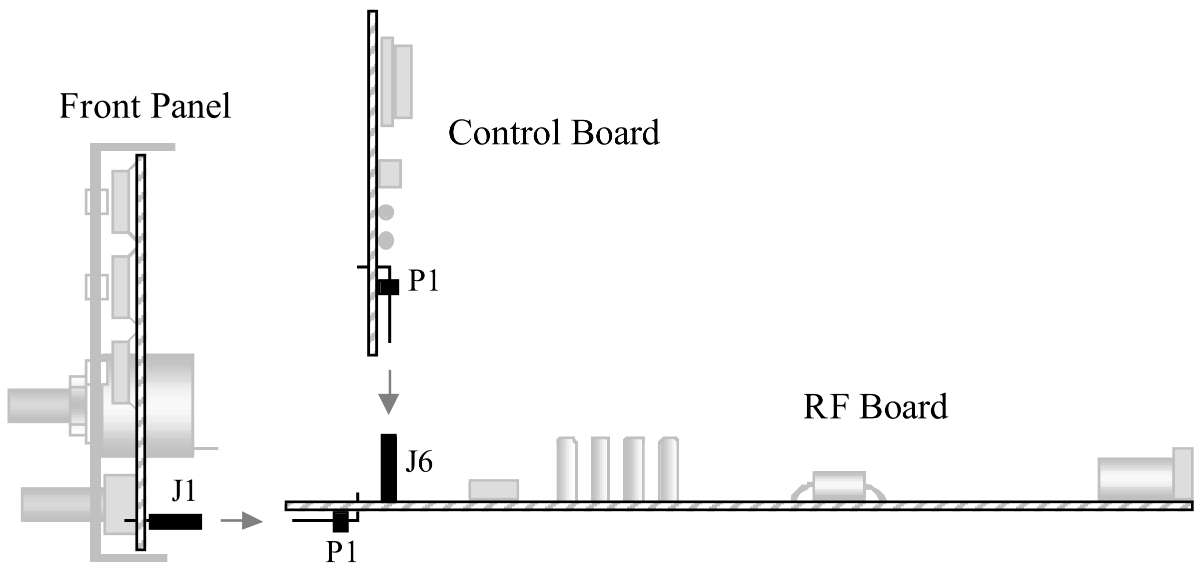


Figure 3-3

There are six steps in the K2 assembly process:

1. Control Board assembly
2. Front Panel Board assembly
3. RF Board assembly and test, part I (control circuits)
4. RF Board assembly and test, part II (receiver and synthesizer)
5. RF Board assembly and test, part III (transmitter)
6. Final assembly

This assembly sequence is important because later steps build on the previous ones. For example, in step 3 you'll put the modules together for the first time, allowing you to try out the K2's built-in frequency counter. The counter will then be used in step 4 to align and test the receiver and synthesizer on 40 meters. In step 5 all the pieces will come together when you complete the transmitter and filters, then align the K2 on all bands. The last few details—speaker, tilt stand, etc.—will be wrapped up in step 6.

Unpacking and Inventory

When you open the kit you should find the following items:

- six chassis pieces (Figure 3-1)
- three printed circuit boards (Figure 3-2)
- **FRONT PANEL** board components bag
- **CONTROL** board components bag
- **RF** board components bag
- **MISCELLANEOUS** components bag (includes hardware)
- **WIRE** bag
- 4-ohm Speaker, 5 small knobs, and large tuning knob
- plastic tube containing the latching relays
- an envelope (inside the manual back cover) containing the LCD bezel, green LED bargraph filter, serial number label, thermal insulators, and two very small self-adhesive rubber pads (round or square)

Inventory

We strongly recommend that you do an inventory of parts before beginning to assemble the kit. It is not necessary to inventory the resistors, which are supplied attached to tape in assembly order.

Even if you don't do an inventory, it is helpful to familiarize yourself with the parts list, Appendix A. Additional information on identifying capacitor, chokes, and resistors is provided below.

Identifying Capacitors

Small-value fixed capacitors are usually marked with one, two, or three digits and no decimal point. If one or two digits are used, that is always the value in *picofarads* (pF). If there are three digits, the third digit is a multiplier. For example, a capacitor marked "151" would be 150 pF (15 with a multiplier of 10^1). Similarly, "330" would be 33 pF, and "102" would be 1000 pF (or .001 µF). All small capacitors whose markings do not follow this convention are described more specifically in the text and parts list.

Fixed capacitors with values of 1000 pF or higher generally use a decimal point in the value, such as .001 or .02. This is the value in *microfarads* (µF). Capacitors also may have a suffix after the value, such as ".001J." In some cases the suffixes or other supplemental markings may be useful in identifying capacitors.

Hard-to-identify capacitor values:

3.3 pF: These capacitors have pillow-shaped, dark-green bodies about 1/8" (3 mm) square, with a black mark on the top. The "3.3" label may be difficult to read without a magnifying glass.

150 pF: These are correctly marked "151" on one side, but the other side is marked #21 ASD, where "#21" may look like "821."

Resistors, Chokes, and the Color Code

All resistor and RF choke color bands are provided in the text along with their values. However, it is helpful to familiarize yourself with the color code to allow you to identify these components without having to refer to the text or parts list each time.

The color-code chart, Figure 3-4, shows how to read the four color bands on 5% resistors. 1% resistors are similar, except that they use five bands (three significant digits, multiplier, and tolerance). For example, a 1,500 ohm (1.5 k) 5% resistor has color bands BROWN, GREEN, and RED. A 1.5 k, 1% resistor has color bands BROWN, GREEN, BLACK, BROWN. The multiplier value is 1 rather than 2 in the 1% case because of the third significant digit.

Because 1% resistors have color bands that are sometimes hard to distinguish clearly, you should always check their resistance using an ohmmeter.

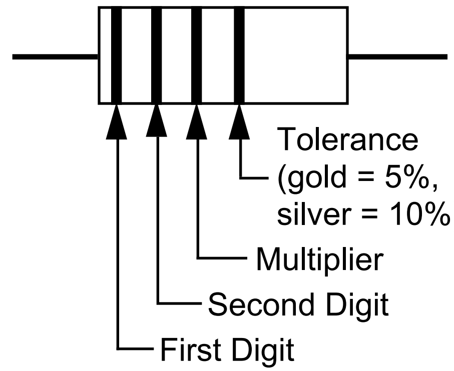
The markings on RF chokes reflect their value in microhenries (µH). Like 5% resistors, chokes use two significant digits and a multiplier. Example: an RF choke with color bands RED, VIOLET, BLACK would have a value of 27 µH.

Tools

The following specialized tools are supplied with the K2:

- .050" (1.3 mm) Allen Wrench, short handle
- 5/64" (2 mm) Allen Wrench, long handle
- Double-ended plastic inductor alignment tool

Color Code



Color	Digit	Multiplier
Black	0	x 1
Brown	1	x 10
Red	2	x 100
Orange	3	x 1K
Yellow	4	x 10K
Green	5	x 100K
Blue	6	x 1M
Violet	7	
Gray	8	
White	9	
Silver	--	x .01
Gold	--	x 0.1

Figure 3-4

In addition to the tools supplied, you will need these standard tools:

- Fine-tip soldering iron, 20-40 watt (temperature-controlled preferred, with 700 or 800°F tip [370-430°C)
- IC-grade, small-diameter (.031") solder **(DO NOT use acid-core solder, water-soluble flux solder, additional flux, or solvents of any kind)**
- Desoldering tools (wick, solder-sucker, etc.)
- Needle-nose pliers
- Small-point diagonal cutters, preferably flush-cutting
- Small Phillips screwdriver
- Jeweler's flat-blade screwdriver

While not required, the following items are recommended:

- DMM (digital multimeter) for doing resistance and voltage checks. Older analog instruments may load down high-impedance circuitry, making measurements less accurate.
- Magnifying glass
- Conductive wrist strap

Assembly Notes


This symbol is used to alert you to important information about assembly, alignment, or operation of the K2.

Photographs

You should review the photographs in Appendix D to get an idea of what the completed PC board assemblies look like.

Step-by-Step Assembly

Each step in the assembly process is accompanied by a check-box:

In some steps you will actually be installing multiple components of a particular type. In this case the instructions will be followed by a table listing all of the components to be installed, so you won't need to refer to the parts list during assembly. The order that the components are installed corresponds to their PCB locations.

Do not skip any assembly steps; you may find that you've installed one component that hinders the installation of another.

Forming component leads: In a few cases you'll find that the space provided for a component on the PC board is larger than the distance between the leads on the part itself. In such cases, you'll need to carefully bend the leads out and then down to fit the given space. Always use needle-nose pliers to accomplish this task, and *bend* the leads–don't tug on them. This is especially important with capacitor leads, which are fragile.

Bottom-Mounted Components

A number of components in the K2 are mounted on the *bottom* of the PC boards to improve component spacing or for electrical reasons. Component outline symbols are provided on both sides of each board, so it will always be clear which side a particular component goes on. You'll be able to tell the top of the board from the bottom easily: the top side has far more parts. Bottom-mounted parts are identified on the schematic by this symbol:

Top/bottom interference: In a few cases, top-mounted parts may interfere with the trimming and soldering of a bottom-mounted part. In this case, pre-trim the leads of the bottom-mounted part before final placement, and solder it on the *bottom* rather than on the top. (Since all holes are plated-through, you can solder on either side.)

Integrated Circuits and ESD

The K2 transceiver uses integrated circuits and transistors that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). Problems caused by ESD can often be difficult to troubleshoot because components may only be degraded, at first, rather than fail completely.

To avoid such problems, simply touch an unpainted, grounded metal surface before handling any components, and occasionally as you build. We also recommend that you take the following anti-static precautions (in order of importance):

- Leave ESD-sensitive parts in their anti-static packaging until you install them
- Ground yourself using a wrist strap with a series 1 megohm resistor (do NOT ground yourself directly, as this poses a shock hazard)
- Make sure your soldering iron has a grounded tip
- Use an anti-static mat on your work bench

IC Sockets

Sockets are used for only the largest ICs. You should **not** use sockets for the other ICs because they tend to be unreliable and can cause problems due to added lead length. Since sockets are not used in most cases, you must double-check the part number and orientation of each IC before soldering.

Soldering, Desoldering, and Plated-Through Holes

The printed circuit boards used in the K2 have circuitry on both sides ("double-sided"). Boards of this type require *plated-through hole*s to complete electrical connections between the two sides. When you solder components on these boards, the solder fills the plated holes, making excellent contact. This means that you do not need to leave a large "fillet" or build-up of solder on top of the pads themselves. *A small amount of solder will do for all connections.*

Unfortunately, removing components from double-sided PC boards can be difficult, since you must get all of the solder back out of the hole before a lead can be removed. To do this, you'll need solder wick and/or a vacuum desoldering tool. It also takes some practice. A number of suggestions are provided below.

The best strategy for avoiding de-soldering is to place all components properly the first time. Double-check values and orientations, and avoid damaging parts via ESD.

When removing components:

- Don't pull a lead or pin out of a hole unless the solder has been removed, or you are applying heat. Otherwise, you can literally pull out the plating on the plated-through hole.
- Limit soldering iron contact to a few seconds at a time.
- Use small-size solder-wick, about 0.1" or 2.5 mm wide. Use the wick on both the top *and* bottom pads when possible. This helps get all of the solder out of the hole.
- If you use a vacuum desoldering tool (solder sucker), use a *large* unit. Small solder suckers are not as effective.
- With ICs, clip all of the pins at the body of the device first, then remove all of the pins *individually*. You may damage pads and traces by trying to remove a component intact, possibly leaving a PC board very difficult to repair.
- Invest in a PC board vice with a heavy base if possible. This makes parts removal easier because it frees up both hands.
- If in doubt about a particular repair, ask for advice from Elecraft or from a someone else with PCB repair experience.

4. Control Board

The control board is the "brain" of the K2. It monitors all signals during receive and transmit, and handles display and control functions via the front panel board. The microprocessor, analog and digital control circuits, automatic gain control (AGC), and audio amplifier are located on this board.

Components

Review the precautions described in the previous section before handling any IC's or transistors. These components can be damaged by static discharge, and the resulting problems are often difficult to troubleshoot.

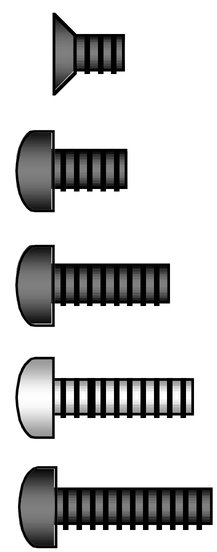
☐ Open the bag of components labeled **CONTROL** and sort the parts into groups (resistors, diodes, capacitors, etc.). If any of the components are unfamiliar, identify them using the illustrations in the parts list, Appendix A.

☐ Locate the control board. It is the smallest of the three K2 PC boards, labeled "K2 CONTROL" on the front side, in the lower right-hand corner. The lower left-hand corner is notched.

☐ Open the bag labeled **MISCELLANEOUS** and empty the contents into a shallow box or pan. This will prevent loss of any of the small hardware while allowing you to locate items as needed.

The Allen wrenches are located in a small bag with the **MISCELLANEOUS** items. These wrenches may have been oiled during manufacturing. Remove the wrenches and wipe off the oil, if any, then discard the bag.

There are five sizes of 4-40 machine screws provided with the kit. The relative sizes of the screws are shown below for identification purposes (not to scale). All of the screws are black anodized except for the 7/16" (11 mm) screws. The 3/16" (4.8 mm) pan-head screws are the most numerous, and will be referred to as **chassis screws** throughout the manual. There is only one flat-head, 3/16" screw.



Flat-head, 3/16" (4.8 mm)

Pan-head, 3/16" (4.8 mm)
(**chassis screws**)

Pan-head, 3/8" (9.5 mm)

Pan-head, 7/16" (11 mm)

Pan-head, 1/2" (12.7 mm)

☐ Identify all of the 4-40 screws and sort them into groups.

Assembly

All of the components to be installed are on the top (component side) of the control board. On the bottom of the board there is an outline for the audio filter option and its two connectors (J1/J2).

☐ With the top side of the PC board facing you (notch at the lower left), locate the position of resistor R1, near the upper-left corner. The label "R1" appears just below the resistor's outline.

☐ Install a 51-k resistor (green-brown-orange) at R1, with its first color band (green) at the top. Make sure it is seated flush with the board, then bend the leads on the bottom to hold it in place. Do not solder this resistor until the remaining fixed resistors have been installed in the next step.

☐ Install the remaining fixed resistors, which are listed below in left-to-right PC board order. The resistors should all be oriented with the first significant-digit band toward the left or top. This will make the color codes easier to read if you need to re-check the values after installation. Check 1% resistors with an ohmmeter.

Note: When multiple items appear on one line in a component list such as the one below, complete all items on one line before moving on to the next, as indicated by the small arrow. (In other words, install R5 first, then R2, then go to the second line.)

__ R5, 33 k (ORG-ORG-ORG) ⇒ __ R2, 3.3 M (ORG-ORG-GRN)
__ R3, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG) __ R4, 5.6 k (GRN-BLU-RED)
__ R6, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)

__ R7, 1.78 k, 1% (BRN-VIO-GRY-BRN)
__ R8, 100, 1% (BRN-BLK-BLK-BLK)
__ R9, 806 k, 1% (GRY-BLK-BLU-ORG)
__ R10, 196 k, 1% (BRN-WHT-BLU-ORG)

__ R16, 10 (BRN-BLK-BLK) ⇒ __ R17, 3.3 M (ORG-ORG-GRN)
__ R21, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG) __ R20, 2.7 ohms (RED-VIO-GLD)

☐ Solder all of the resistors, then trim the leads as close as possible to the solder joints.

Note: Whenever you see an instruction to solder one or more components with long leads (such as resistors), you should trim the leads after soldering.

☐ Locate RP6, a 5.1 k, 10-pin resistor network. ("RP" means "resistor pack," another name for resistor networks.) RP6 is usually labeled "770103512." Check the parts list for alternative resistor network labels if necessary. Pin 1 of RP6 is indicated by a dot.

☐ Locate the component outline for RP6 at the left end of the PC board. Install the resistor network so that the end with the dot is lined up with the "1" label. (RP6 may be labeled "10 K" on the PC board rather than "5.1 K".)

☐ Make sure the resistor network is seated firmly on the board, then bend the leads at the far ends in opposite directions to hold it in place. (Do not trim the leads.) Do not solder RP6 yet.

ⓘ Components with many leads are difficult to remove once soldered. Double-check the part numbers and orientation.

☐ Install the remaining resistor networks in the order listed below. Do not solder them until the next step.

__ RP1, 3.9 k, 10 pins (770103392) __ RP7, 33 k, 8 pins (8A3.333G)
__ RP2, 82 k, 8 pins (77083823) __ RP3, 47 k, 10 pins (10A3.473G)
__ RP5, 470, 10 pins (10A3.471G) __ RP4, 82 k, 8 pins (77083823)

☐ Solder all of the resistor networks.

☐ Install short wire jumpers at R18 and R19, to the right of P2. Discarded component leads (from resistors, large diodes, etc.) should be used to form these and other short jumpers. Solder.

☐ Install the diodes listed below, beginning with D1, which is in the upper left-hand corner of the PC board. (Refer to the parts list if necessary to identify the different types of diodes.) If a diode has only one band, the end with the band (the cathode) should be oriented toward the banded end of the corresponding PC board outline. If a diode has multiple bands, the *widest* band indicates the cathode end.

__ D1, 1N4148	__ D2, 1N4148	__ D3, 1N5817

☐ Double-check the orientation of the diodes, then solder.

☐ Install the small fixed capacitors listed below, beginning with C2 in the upper left-hand corner of the board. (This list includes all of the fixed capacitors on the control board except the tall, cylindrical electrolytic types, which will be installed later.) The list shows both the value and the capacitor labels, using notation explained in the previous section. After installing each capacitor, bend the leads outward to hold it in place, but do not solder.

Note: Remember to complete all items in each line before moving on to the next. (Install C2, C3, and C4, then C7, etc.)

__ C2, .001 (102) ⇒	__ C3, .01 (103) ⇒	__ C4, 0.47 (474)
__ C7, 330 (331)	__ C6, .047 (473)	__ C8, 39 (39)
__ C9, .01 (103)	__ C10, .01 (103)	__ C12, .001 (102)
__ C5, .01 (103)	__ C14, .047 (473)	__ C17, .01 (103)
__ C42, .01 (103)		

__ C11, .01 (103)	__ C16, .047 (473)	__ C18, .01 (103)
__ C19, .047 (473)	__ C21, 33 (33)	__ C20, .001 (102)
__ C23, .01 (103)	__ C27, .022 (223)	__ C25, 0.1 (104)
__ C26, 0.1 (104)	__ C24, .0027 (272)	__ C31, .047 (473)
__ C34, .001 (102)	__ C30, .047 (473)	__ C40, .01 (103)
__ C35, .01 (103)	__ C36, .0027 (272)	__ C39, .01 (103)
__ C41, .01 (103)	__ C37, .01 (103)	__ C38, 680 (681)

☐ Solder all of the small fixed capacitors.

☐ Install and solder the electrolytic capacitors listed below, which are polarized. Be sure that the (+) lead is installed in the hole marked with a "+" symbol. The (+) lead is usually longer than the (–) lead, and the (–) lead is identified by a black stripe (Figure 4-1).

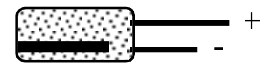


Figure 4-1

__ C1, 2.2 µF ⇒	__ C13, 22 µF ⇒	__ C15, 100 µF
__ C28, 220 µF	__ C29, 220 µF	__ C33, 2.2 µF
__ C32, 22 µF		

☐ Install and solder ceramic trimmer capacitor C22. Orient the flat side of this trimmer as shown on its PC board outline.

☐ Using a small flat-blade screwdriver, set C22 so that its screwdriver slot is parallel to the outline of nearby crystal X2.

☐ Locate Q12 (type PN2222A), which is a small, black TO-92 package transistor. Q12 and other TO-92 transistors may have either of the two shapes shown in Figure 4-2. **The large flat side of the device must be aligned with the flat side of the component outline.** The part number may be found on either side.

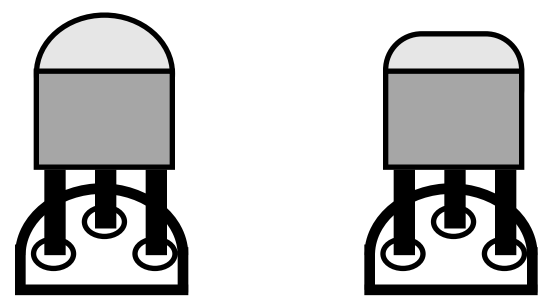


Figure 4-2

☐ Install Q12 near the upper left-hand corner of the PC board. Align the large flat side of Q12 with its PC board outline as in Figure 4-2. The body of the transistor should be about 1/8" (3 mm) above the board; don't force it down too far or you may break the leads. Bend the leads of the transistor outward slightly on the bottom to hold it in place. Solder Q12.

☐ Install the remaining TO-92 package transistors in the order listed below.

__ Q11, PN2222A ⇒	__ Q1, 2N3906 ⇒	__ Q2, 2N3906
__ Q3, 2N7000	__ Q4, 2N7000	__ Q5, 2N7000
__ Q6, J310	__ Q7, J310	__ Q8, PN2222A
__ Q9, MPS5179	__ Q10, MPS5179	

☐ Solder and trim the leads of these transistors.

☐ Install crystals X1 and X2 so that they are flat against the board. X1 is 5.068 MHz and is located near the notch in the lower left-hand corner. X2 is 4.000 MHz, and is located near the center of the board.

☐ Solder the crystals.

☐ Prepare two 3/4" (19 mm) jumpers wires from discarded component leads. These short jumpers will be used to ground the crystal cans in the next step.

ⓘ Grounding the crystal cans in the following step is required to ensure proper crystal oscillator performance.

☐ Referring to Figure 4-3, insert the jumper wires into the grounding holes provided near X1 and X2. Fold each wire over the top of the crystal and solder it to the top of the can. (Only a small amount of solder is required.) Then solder and trim the wire on the bottom of the board.

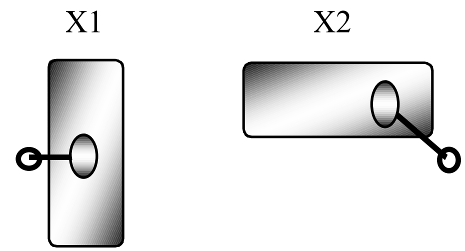


Figure 4-3

ⓘ The voltage regulators, U4 and U5, will be installed in the following steps. These regulators have different voltages and must not be interchanged. Check the labels before soldering.

☐ Install U4 (LM2930T-8) and U5 (78M05, 7805T, L7805, etc.), bending the leads as indicated (Figure 4-4). Use long-nose pliers to create gradual rather than sharp bends. After inserting the leads into the proper holes, secure each IC with a 4-40 x 3/8" (9.5 mm) machine screw, #4 lock washer, and 4-40 nut. (These regulators may have either plastic or metal mounting tabs.)

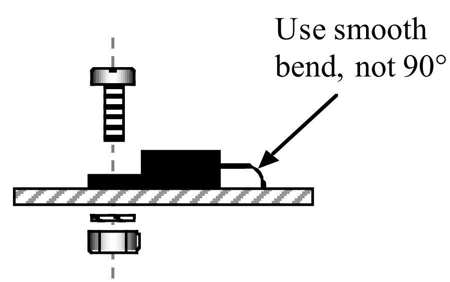


Figure 4-4

☐ Solder the voltage regulator ICs.

☐ Trim the leads of these ICs as close to the PC board as possible.

☐ Install a 40-pin IC socket at U6. (The microprocessor will be inserted into the socket in a later step.) Orient the notched end of the socket to the left as shown on the PC board outline. Bend two of the socket's diagonal corner leads slightly to hold the socket in place, then solder only these two pins. If the socket does not appear to be seated flat on the PC board, reheat the solder joints one at a time while pressing on the socket.

☐ Solder the remaining pins of the 40-pin socket.

ⓘ The connectors used in the following steps have plastic bodies that can may melt if too much heat is applied during soldering, causing the pins to be mis-positioned. Limit soldering time for each pin to 3 seconds maximum (1 to 2 seconds should be adequate).

☐ Install the 2-pin male connectors, P5 and P6. As shown in Figure 4-5, the polarizing tab on each connector should be closest to the top edge of the board. P5, the voltmeter input connector, can be found near the upper left-hand corner of the board. P6 is used for frequency counter input, which is in the upper right-hand corner.

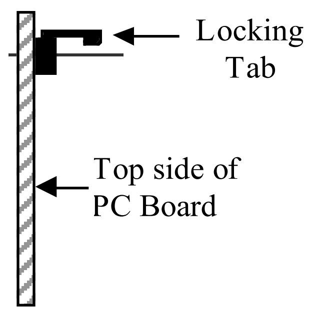


Figure 4-5

☐ Install the 10-pin, dual-row connector, P4. It is located to the left of P5. It must be seated flat on the board before soldering.

☐ Install S1, the miniature slide switch, to the right of P5.

☐ At the upper left and right corners of the board you'll find two short jumper locations, each labeled with a ground symbol (⏚). These jumpers are provided for connecting clip leads during alignment and test. Use discarded component leads to make 3/4" (19 mm) U-shaped wires for each jumper (Figure 4-6). Solder the jumpers on the bottom of the board, with the top of the U-shape approx. 1/4" (6 mm) above the board.

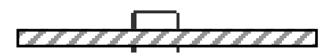


Figure 4-6

In the following steps, the three multi-pin connectors along the bottom edge of the board (P1, P2 and P3) will be installed. These connectors must be positioned and soldered carefully. *Incorrect alignment of these connectors may cause instability or intermittent operation, and it is very difficult to remove them once they are soldered.*

☐ Position 6-pin right-angle connector P1 as shown in the side view below (Figure 4-7). Also review Figure 3-3, which shows the locations of all board-to-board connectors**. Do not solder P1 until the next step.** The plastic part of the connector must be seated flat against the PC board, and the pins must be parallel to the board. Do not bend or trim the pins on the bottom of the board.

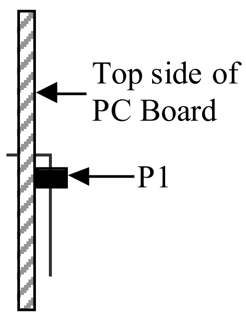


Figure 4-7

☐ Solder just the two end pins of P1, then examine the placement of the connector closely. If P1 is not flat against the board, re-heat the solder on the end pins one at a time while pressing firmly on the connector. Once it is in the right position, solder all pins. Do not trim leads.

☐ Install P3, the 20-pin, dual-row right-angle connector (Figure 4-8). Use the same method you used for P1. Do not solder P3 until you are sure that it is seated properly.

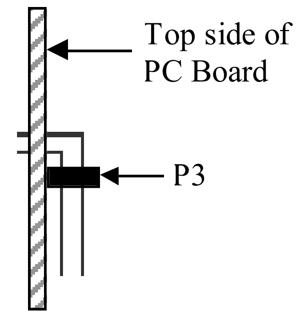


Figure 4-8

☐ Install P2, the 36-pin, dual-row, right-angle connector. Use the same method you used for P1 and P3.

When you install ICs in the following steps, always straighten the leads of each IC first as shown in Figure 4-9. The two rows of pins must be straight and parallel to each other to establish the proper pin spacing for insertion into the PC board or socket.

To straighten the pins, rest one entire row of pins against a hard, flat surface. Press down gently on the other row of pins and rock the IC forward to bend the pins into position as shown below.

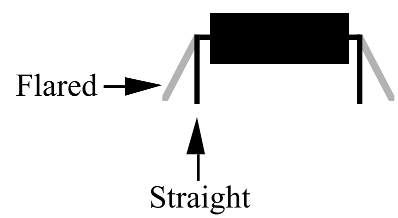


Figure 4-9

Before handling any IC, touch an unpainted, grounded metal surface or put on a conductive wrist-strap.

☐ Locate U2, an 8-pin IC, part number LM833. (LM833 is the basic part number. There may be an additional prefix or suffix or other markings.) This and all remaining ICs on the control board are Dual-Inline Packages, or DIPs. Referring to Figure 4-10, identify the notched or dimpled end of the IC. IC pins are counted starting from pin 1 (as shown below) and going counter-clockwise.

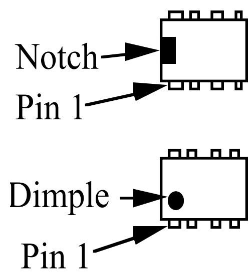


Figure 4-10

☐ Straighten the leads of U2 (see Figure 4-9).

☐ Install U2 in the orientation shown by its PC board outline, near the upper left-hand corner of the PC board, but do not solder it yet. Make sure the notched or dimpled end is lined up with the notched end of the PC board outline. Even though the outline is covered when the IC is installed, you can still verify that the IC is installed correctly by looking at pin 1. The PC board pad corresponding to pin 1 will be either oval or round.

You may overheat the IC pins or PC pads if you take an excessive length of time to solder. After a few tries, you should be able to solder an IC pin in about 1 or 2 seconds.

☐ Bend two of U2's corner pins out slightly on the bottom of the board to hold the IC firmly in place, flat against the top of the board. Find pin 1 and verify that its pad is either round or oval. Once U2 is properly seated, solder all eight pins, using a minimum of solder.

☐ Install the ICs listed below. Bend the pins to hold each IC in place as you did with U2, but do not solder until the next step. The notched or dimpled end of each IC must be aligned with the notched end of its PC board outline.

Note: For U1, the IC type supplied may be either NE602 or SA602.

__ U1, NE602	__ U3, LM6482	__ U7, 25LC320
__ U8, MAX534	__ U9, LM380	__ U10, LMC660

☐ Check the orientation of pin 1 on each IC by looking at the associated PC board pads, as before. Then solder all of the ICs.

☐ Locate the microprocessor, U6.

☐ Straighten the pins of the microcontroller, U6 (see Figure 4-9). With large IC such as this, you can hold the IC body at the ends as you re-form each row of pins.

When the microcontroller is pressed in its socket, you must be careful to avoid jamming its pins. Make sure that all pins are lined up with the associated holes in the socket before pressing down on the IC. Watch the pins on both rows as you press down, re-aligning them with the socket holes individually if necessary.

☐ Insert the microcontroller, U6, into its socket. Make sure that pin 1 on the IC itself is lined up with the pin 1 label near the lower left-hand corner of the PCB outline.

Option Components

All component locations on the Control board should now be filled except J1 and J2, on the bottom of the board, which are provided for an audio filter option (KAF2). This option should be installed only after the basic K2 kit has been completed and tested.

Visual Inspection

Nearly all problems with kits are due to incorrectly installed components or poor solder joints. You can avoid these problems by doing a simple visual inspection. A few minutes spent here may save you hours of troubleshooting time.

☐ Make sure there are no components installed backwards. Check all diodes, resistor networks, electrolytic capacitors, and ICs. (The parts placement drawings in Appendix F will be helpful when checking diode orientation.)

☐ Examine the bottom of the PC board carefully for the following (use a magnifying glass if available):

- cold solder joints
- solder bridges
- unsoldered pins

Resistance Checks

When measuring resistances that show a minimum value in the table (such as > 100 k), your resistance reading may be much higher or even infinite. This is typical when using a DMM (digital multimeter). If you use an analog meter you may find that some or all resistance measurements are too low.

☐ Perform the resistance checks listed below to ensure that there are no shorts in the most critical control circuits. (The control board will be fully tested in a later section.)

Test Point	Signal Name	Res. (to GND)
P2 pin 1	12V	> 10 k
U5, OUT ("5V" pin)	5A	> 2 k
U4, OUT ("8V" pin)	8A	3 - 7 k
Q1 collector	8 T	> 1 M
Q2 collector	8R	> 1 M
U3 pin 8	12V IN	> 10 k
U6 pin 13	OSC1	> 100 k
U6 pin 14	OSC2	> 100 k
U6 pin 29	DASH	70 - 90 k
U6 pin 30	DOT/PTT	70 - 90 k
U8 pin 2	VPWR	> 100 k
U8 pin 15	VBIAS-XFIL	> 100 k
U8 pin 16	VBFO	> 100 k

5. Front Panel Board

The front panel board includes all of the control and display devices that you'll use when operating the K2, including the liquid-crystal display (LCD), LED bargraph, push-button switches, and potentiometers. See Appendix D for photos of the completed front panel assembly.

Components

☐ Open the bag labeled **FRONT PANEL** and sort the parts into groups (resistors, diodes, capacitors, etc.). Observe anti-static precautions when handling ICs and transistors.

☐ Locate the front panel PC board, which is just a bit larger than the control board. It is labeled "K2 FP" on the top side, in the lower right-hand corner.

Assembly

ⓘ Your K2's appearance and operation will be adversely affected if the controls or display are not mounted correctly. Some components must be mounted before others, so you should follow the indicated assembly sequence. There are also special instructions for installing components on the bottom of the board.

☐ Locate the Spacer Set (Figure 5-1). Using long-nose pliers, carefully break out the pushbutton switch spacing tool and the four backlight LED spacers. Break the material only at the eight narrow points. Discard the supporting pieces (marked *X*).

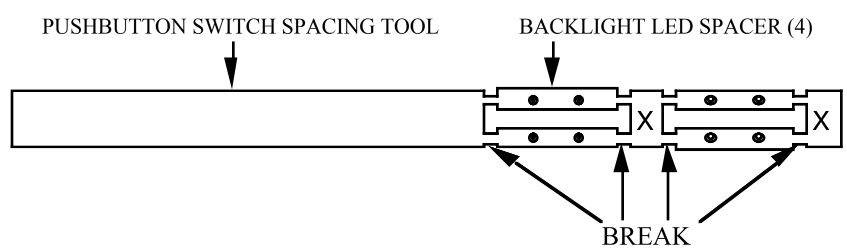


Figure 5-1

☐ Position pushbutton switches S1 and S2 as shown in Figure 5-2, using the switch spacing tool to set the switch height. Make sure all four legs of each switch are centered in their holes, then gently push each switch until it is resting flush against the switch-spacing tool. (Caution: switch pins are fragile.) *Do not solder yet.*

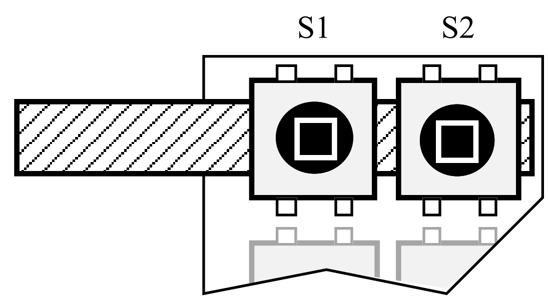


Figure 5-2

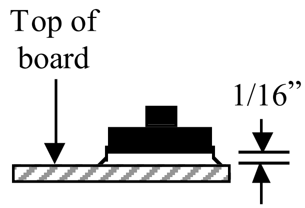


Figure 5-3

Figure 5-3 shows a side view of a switch that is properly mounted (spacing tool not shown). The leads of the switches will just be visible on the bottom of the board. *Proper switch height is important for maintaining an even appearance.*

☐ Once you’re satisfied that S1 and S2 are seated correctly, solder the leads (on the bottom side of the board). Leave the spacing tool in place until you’ve finished soldering both switches.

☐ Install the remaining switches, S3-S16, using the same technique. When you get to S8 through S16, you may install three switches at a time using the spacing tool.

☐ Install the following 1/4-watt fixed resistors, which are listed in left-to-right PC board order. Solder the resistors after all have been installed. (R13 and a few other components in its vicinity are part of the SSB adapter option, and are not included in the basic K2 kit. A check-list of these components is provided at the end of this section.)

__ R12, 120 (BRN-RED-BRN) ⇒ __ R10, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)
__ R9, 220 (RED-RED-BRN) __ R11, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)
__ R6, 4.7 k (YEL-VIO-RED) __ R7, 4.7 k (YEL-VIO-RED)
__ R14, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)

☐ Install the following resistors on the bottom of the board. Solder them on the bottom side. Keep your iron tip away from the bodies of the resistors.

__ R16, 15 k (BRN-GRN-ORG) __ R15, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)

ⓘ **When you install the resistor networks in the next step, you must align the dotted end of the network with the pin 1 label on the PC board outline.**

☐ Install the resistor networks listed below (top side of the board). Double-check pin 1 orientation and values before soldering.

__ RP2, 120, 10 pins (770101121) (dotted end should be near "RP2" label)
__ RP1, 100 k, 10 pins (10A1.104G) (dotted end near "RP1" label)

☐ Install and solder the diodes listed below, observing proper orientation as described in the previous section.

__ D4, 1N5817 __ D5, 1N5817 __ D6, 1N5817

☐ Install and solder the following capacitors. C9 is located on the bottom of the board and must be soldered on the top side.

__ C1, .047 (473) __ C2, .01 (103) __ C3, .047 (473)

__ C9, .01 (103), on bottom

☐ Install PN2222A transistors at Q1 and Q2, near the middle of the board, and solder. These transistors must be mounted so the lead length above the PC board is less than 1/8" (3 mm) to prevent them from hitting the front panel.

☐ There are two ground jumpers on the front panel board, one at the far left and the other at the lower right, labeled "GND." Use discarded component leads to make 3/4" (19 mm) U-shaped wires for each jumper. Solder these jumpers on the bottom of the board.

☐ Install a 40-pin IC socket at U1, on the **bottom** of the board. (The IC will be inserted into this socket later.) Orient the notched end of the socket to the left as shown on the PC board outline.

ⓘ The ICs to be installed in the next step are very sensitive to static discharge. Touch a grounded surface before handling each IC. Also note that U4's label will read upside-down (pin 1 at the right) when properly installed.

☐ Install the following ICs. Before soldering, verify that the ICs are oriented correctly (pin 1 associated with a round or oval pad).

__ U4, A6B595KA or TPIC6B595
__ U3, A6B595KA or TPIC6B595
__ U2, 74HC165

ⓘ The bargraph LED will be installed in the following two steps. This component must be seated flat on the PC board or it will interfere with final front panel assembly. Also, any misalignment will be visible from the front of the K2.

☐ Locate the bargraph LED, DS2. The bargraph has a beveled corner or edge that indicates pin 1. Install DS2 as shown by its PC board outline, just to the left of the LCD. Bend two opposite corner pins slightly to hold it to the board, then solder only these two pins.

☐ If the bargraph is not perfectly flat against the PC board, re-heat the solder on the corner pins alternately while pressing it down. Once it is in the correct position, solder the remaining pins.

☐ Remove any hardware supplied with the microphone jack, J2. The nut and washer will not be used.

☐ Install the microphone jack (J2) in the lower left-hand corner of the board, with its polarizing nub at the top (Figure 5-4). Press the jack down until it is completely flat against the PC board. Re-check the orientation of the polarizing nub before soldering.

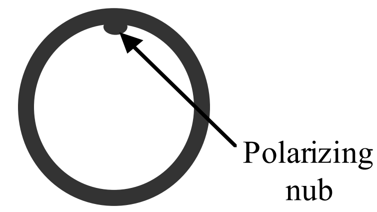


Figure 5-4

☐ Install two 3/16" (4.8 mm) diameter x 1/4" (6.4 mm) long round standoffs on the top of the board, adjacent to the microphone jack (Figure 5-5). Use *two* #4 lock washers between each standoff and the PC board as shown. Secure the standoffs from the bottom side with chassis screws. Recall that "chassis screw" is short-hand for 3/16" (4.8 mm) long pan-head machine screws.

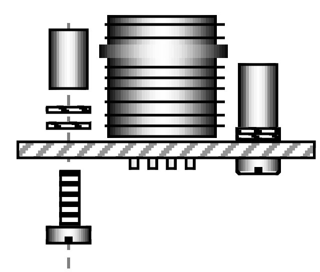


Figure 5-5

☐ Install another 3/16" (4.8 mm) diameter x 1/4" (6.4 mm) long round standoff on the top of the PC board, on the left side of the large square hole in the middle of the board. The standoff mounting hole is just below C2. Use the same hardware as indicated in Figure 5-5, including two #4 lock washers and one chassis screw.

☐ Install two 1/4" (6.4 mm) diameter x 1/2" (12.7 mm) long hex standoffs on the bottom of the board (Figure 5-6). The holes for these standoffs are indicated by large pads on the top and bottom of the board. Use one lock washer and a chassis screw for each standoff. Insert the lock washer between the standoff and PC board.

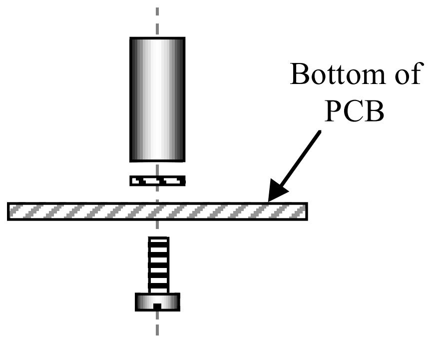


Figure 5-6

☐ Identify the two different types of panel-mount potentiometers. Four of them are 5-kohm *linear-taper* types, labeled "B5K". The fifth is an *audio-taper* type, which may be either 5 k ("A5K") or 10 k ("A10K"). They may be physically identical or have slightly different shafts, body colors, etc.

When you install the panel-mount potentiometers in the next two steps, do not push on the shafts, which may damage the part. Push only on the metal frame.

☐ Install the audio-taper potentiometer, R3, in the lower left-hand corner. (The PCB is labeled "5 K" under R3, even though a 10-k audio-taper unit may have been supplied.) *Push only on the frame, not the shaft.* Make sure that the potentiometer body is parallel to the PC board and is pressed against the board as far as it will go before soldering.

☐ Install the four 5-k linear-taper potentiometers at R1, R2, R4, and R5. (The PC board may be labeled "5 K" or "10 K" at each of these positions.) Verify correct positioning as you did in the previous step.

Before installing J1 in the following step, review Figure 3-3 to be sure you have J1 on the correct side of the board.

☐ The front panel attaches to the RF board via J1, a 20-pin single-row female connector. **Install J1 on the bottom side of the board** (Figure 5-7). Solder just two pins, one at either end.

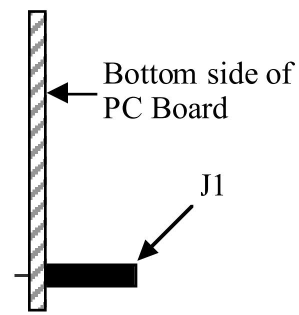


Figure 5-7

☐ Re-heat the two end pins and press the connector down until J1 is seated flat against the board, then solder the remaining pins.

☐ Install rectangular gray key caps on S1 and S3 so the key caps are parallel to the long axis of the PC board (Figure 5-8). The caps are installed simply by pressing them onto the switch plungers.

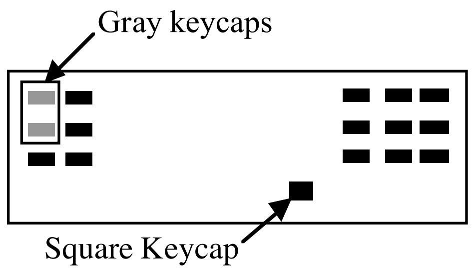


Figure 5-8

☐ Install a square black key cap on S7 as shown above.

☐ Install rectangular black key caps on the remaining switches.

Before handling U1, touch an unpainted, grounded metal surface or put on a conductive wrist-strap.

☐ Straighten the pins of U1, the LCD driver (PCF8566), as you did with the microcontroller on the control board.

☐ Insert U1 into its socket on the bottom of the board. (This must be done before continuing with LCD installation, since the LCD's presence will make pressing U1 into its socket much more difficult.) Be sure that U1 is completely seated with no bent pins.

☐ Locate the LCD backlight assembly, which is about 3" (7.5 cm) long. It includes the diffuser and two small LEDs, one at each end. *Do not remove the backing from either side of the diffuser.*

☐ Make sure the LEDs in the LCD backlight assembly are pressed into the diffuser and are not mis-aligned or loose.

☐ Place two 3/4" (19 mm) long spacers over the leads of each backlight LED as shown in Figure 5-9.

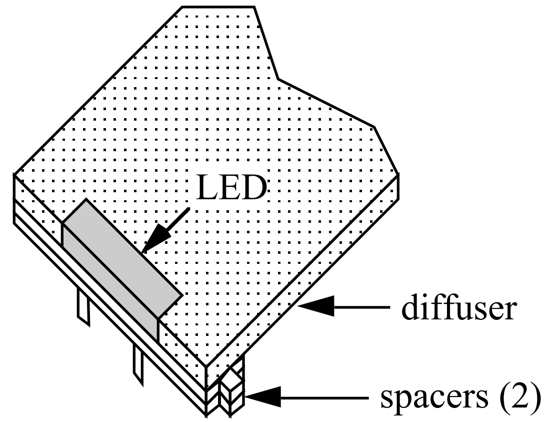


Figure 5-9

☐ Position the backlight assembly between the mounting holes labeled D2 and D3 as shown in Figure 5-10. *The diffuser must be parallel to and 1/8" (3 mm) above the PC board.* To hold the LED spacers and backlight assembly in place, use a rubber band or bend the LED leads out slightly on either end.

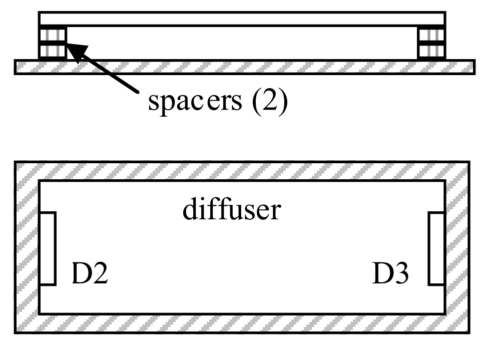


Figure 5-10

☐ Examine the backlight assembly closely to ensure that it is parallel to the front panel board and seated as far down on the board as it will go (exactly 1/8" [3 mm] above the board).

☐ Solder D2 and D3. If the backlight assembly is not flat against the PC board, re-heat the LED pins one at a time and press it into place.

⚠ Caution: The LCD and its pins are fragile—handle carefully. Do not remove the protective plastic film from the surface of the LCD until later in this section when the front panel assembly is completed.

☐ Remove the LCD from its packing materials, being careful not to bend the pins.

☐ The LCD has six pins along the bottom edge (three on each side), and 24 pins along the top edge. Place the LCD in its proper position on the board but do not solder yet.

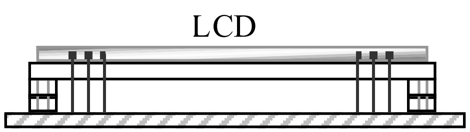


Figure 5-11

☐ The LCD must be seated flat against the diffuser as shown in the edge view (Figure 5-11). If the LCD does not appear to be seated correctly, it may be because the backlight LEDs or spacers are mis-aligned. When the entire assembly is installed correctly, the LCD's pins will all protrude the same distance from the bottom of the board. (Some units may be supplied with shorter pins that do not protrude at all.)

☐ Solder the four corner pins of the LCD, then re-check the alignment of the LCD assembly. If everything looks correct, solder the remaining pins. LCD pins can be soldered on the top of the board if they do not protrude from the bottom.

☐ Attach two thin, 1/4" (6.4 mm) self-adhesive rubber pads to the bottom side of the front panel board in the positions indicated in Figure 5-12. The pads should be placed as close as possible to the corners, but should not hang over on either edge. These pads establish the correct spacing for the front panel board and provide some vibration resistance.

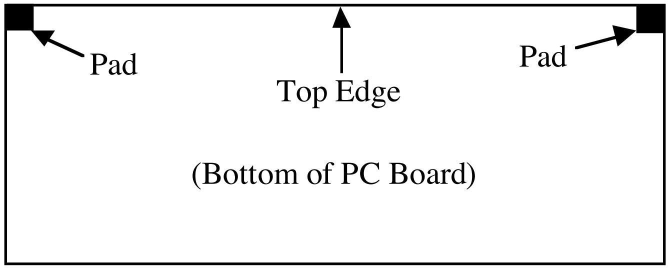


Figure 5-12

Uninstalled Components

☐ Check off each of the components in the list below, verifying that they are not yet installed.

__ C4, .01 (103)	__ C5, .01 (103)	__ C6, .01 (103)
__ C7, .01 (103)	__ C8, .01 (103)	__ R13, 68 k, 1%

__ RP3, 10 k resistor network
__ Q3, 2N3906
__ P1 (Mic. Configuration connector, on the bottom of the board)

☐ The unfilled locations (above) are for parts that are provided with the SSB adapter (model KSB2). If you have the SSB adapter kit, you should install them now. Follow the *third* and *fourth* assembly steps under **Front Panel Board Components** in the KSB2 manual.

Visual Inspection

☐ Make sure there are no components installed backwards. Check all diodes, resistor networks, electrolytic capacitors, and ICs. The parts placement drawings in Appendix F will be helpful in verifying the orientation of diodes.

☐ Examine the bottom of the PC board for solder bridges, cold solder joints, or unsoldered components.

Resistance Checks

☐ Set all potentiometers to their mid-points (approx.).

☐ Perform the resistance checks listed below. U1 is on the back of the board.

Test Point	**Signal Name**	**Res. (to GND)**
U1 pin 1	IDAT	25 - 35 k
U1 pin 2	ICLK	25 - 35 k
U1 pin 3	/SYNC	40 - 60 k
U1 pin 4	CLK	> 50 k
U1 pin 5	5A	15 - 40 k
U1 pin 6 - 11	Ground	0
U1 pin 12	2V	9 - 11 k
U1 pin 13 - 40	LCD segments	> 50 k
J1 pin 1	AF gain 1	> 1 M
J1 pin 2	AF gain 2	> 1 M
J1 pin 3	Ground	0
J1 pin 4	DOT/PTT	> 1 M
J1 pin 5	MIC AF	> 1 M
J1 pin 6	ENC B	> 50 k
J1 pin 7	AUXBUS	> 1 M
J1 pin 8	Ground	0
J1 pin 9	SR DOUT	> 50 k
J1 pin 10	SR DIN	> 50 k
J1 pin 11	SR WRT	> 50 k
J1 pin 12	SR CK	> 50 k
J1 pin 13	ENC A	> 50 k
J1 pin 14	SR RD	> 50 k
J1 pin 15	VPOTS	10 - 60 k
J1 pin 16	ICLK	25 - 35 k
J1 pin 17	IDAT	25 - 35 k
J1 pin 18	5A	15 - 40 k
J1 pin 19	RF gain	1.5 - 3.5 k
J1 pin 20	Ground	0

Front Panel Final Assembly

☐ Locate the front panel chassis piece. Place it on a soft cloth to protect the finish and labeling.

☐ Some holes in the front panel were masked on the inside surface during painting. If masking tape (usually green in color) is still present, you'll need to remove it. The holes that are masked are in the four corners, along the top and bottom edges.

Masking tape should be removed as follows:

- Using a blunt instrument such as a ball-point pen, push on the tape through a hole until the tape begins to lift away from the surface.
- Peel the tape completely off, using a sharp tool if necessary. Be careful not to nick or scratch the outer surface of the panel.

☐ After removing any masking tape, place the front panel chassis piece face-down, with the large, round microphone jack hole on the right.

☐ Locate the green plastic bargraph filter and two pieces of double-backed tape. These items will be found in a small bag.

Caution: The adhesive on the double-backed tape is very strong. Once you position the tape on the green filter, you will not be able to remove it. Be very careful to align the tape with the long edges of the filter as explained below.

☐ Remove the white paper backing from one side of each piece of tape. Attach the tape to the *long* edges of the green filter (Figure 5-13). Be careful not to get any adhesive on the center portion of the filter, since it might be visible after installation.

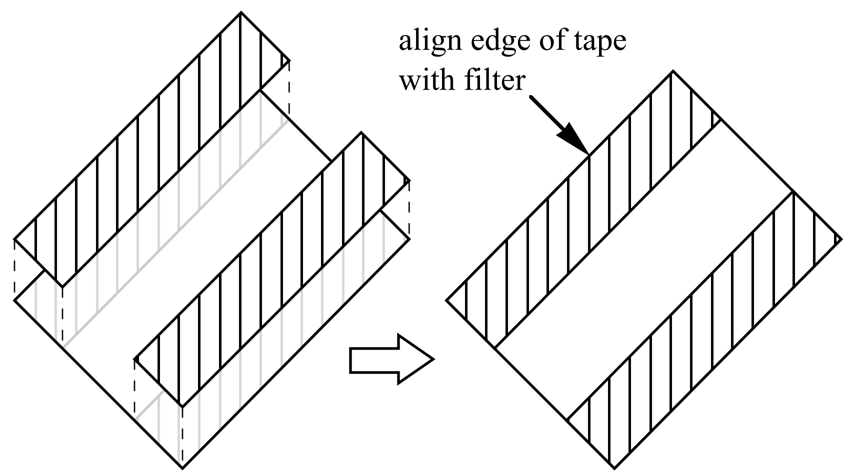


Figure 5-13

☐ Remove the brown paper backing from the other side of each piece of tape, then turn the filter/tape assembly adhesive-side down. Carefully center the green plastic filter over the ***inside*** of the bargraph LED hole (Figure 5-14).

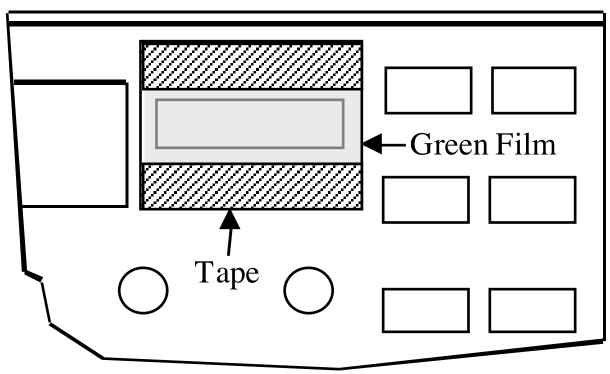


Figure 5-14

☐ Turn the front panel face up.

☐ Position the clear plastic LCD bezel over the LCD and bargraph holes, then secure it with four 2-56 screws (stainless steel) as shown in Figure 5-15. **Tighten the 2-56 screws only the amount needed to hold the bezel to the front panel. Over-tightening may crack the bezel or strip the threaded holes in the panel.**

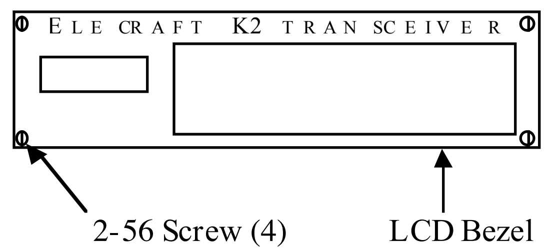


Figure 5-15

☐ Remove the insulation from four 1.5" (38 mm) lengths of green hookup wire.

☐ Install the bare wires on the bottom of the front panel PC board, using the four pads below the large rectangular hole (Figure 5-16).

☐ Solder and trim the wires on the top side of the board. The wires will be connected to the optical encoder, Z1, in a later step.

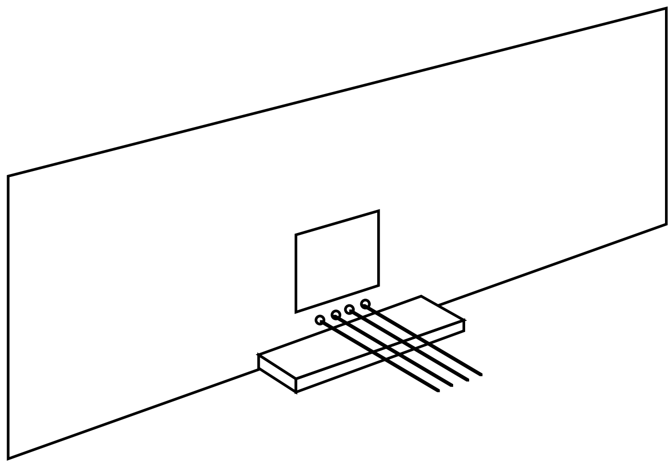


Figure 5-16

☐ Remove the protective plastic film from the face of the LCD. Be careful not to scratch the glass. **Caution: Do not peel off the LCD *glass*, just the thin protective film. The LCD will not be usable if you lift the glass itself.**

☐ Insert the front panel PC board assembly into the front panel. The pushbutton switch caps on both sides of the LCD should protrude slightly as shown in the side view, Figure 5-17a.

Note: the board/panel assembly will not be rigidly held in place until it is mated with the RF and control boards in a later section.

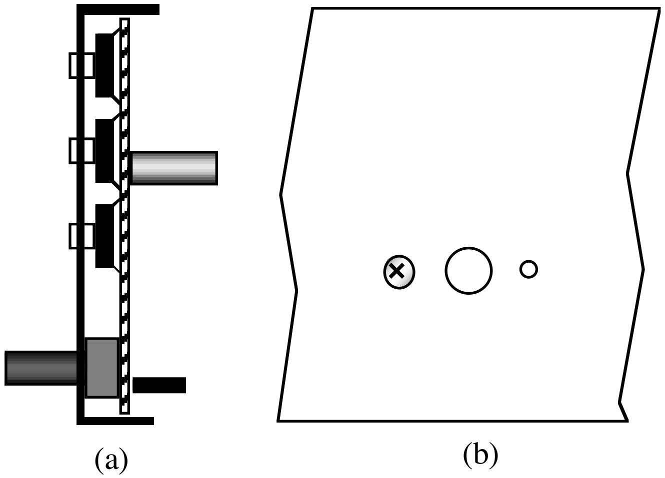


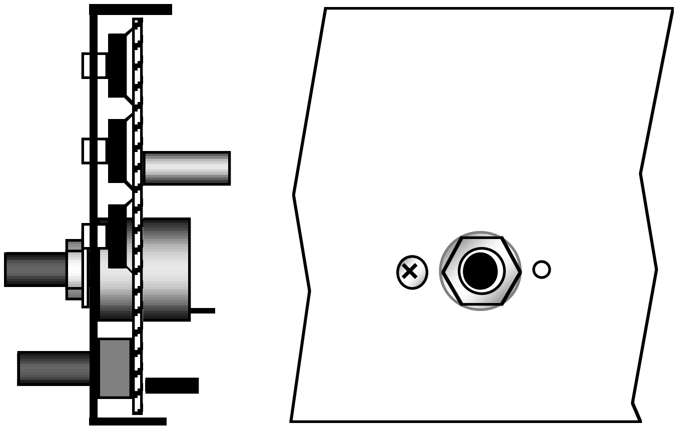
Figure 5-17

☐ A 1/4" (6.4 mm) standoff on the PC board should now be visible through the hole just to the left of the encoder mounting hole. Secure the panel to this standoff using the 4-40 x 3/16" (4.8 mm) *flat-head* screw as shown in Figure 5-17b.

☐ Remove the hardware from the shaft of the encoder, Z1, and discard the lock washer, which will not be used. Insert the encoder through the hole in the front panel board (Figure 5-18a).

☐ Cut 1/8" (3 mm) off the end of each of the encoder's four connector pins.

☐ Attach the encoder to the inside of the front panel using the nut and flat washer only. Figure 5-18 shows the side view (a) and front view (b) with encoder properly installed. The encoder has a small metal tab near the shaft that will only allow it to be installed one way. Do not over-tighten the nut. (Note: the green encoder bushing is metal, not plastic.)



(a) (b)

Figure 5-18

☐ Attach the four encoder wires you installed earlier to the matching pins on the back of the encoder. Each wire should be wrapped securely around the base of its matching pin, with no slack in the wire. Trim and solder the wires, making sure they aren't shorting to each other or to the encoder body, which is conductive.

☐ Set all potentiometers to midway in their rotation.

☐ Attach five small knobs to the potentiometer shafts, starting with the KEYER and POWER controls. Each knob has two set screws which can be tightened using the smaller of the two Allen wrenches (.050", 1.3 mm). The knobs should be mounted as close as possible to the panel without touching it. Align the pointers per panel labeling.

☐ Locate the 1" (25 mm) diameter by 1/16" (1.6 mm) thick felt washer. Place the washer over the encoder's finishing nut (Figure 5-19). The washer should be seated directly on the front panel, with the nut completely inside it.

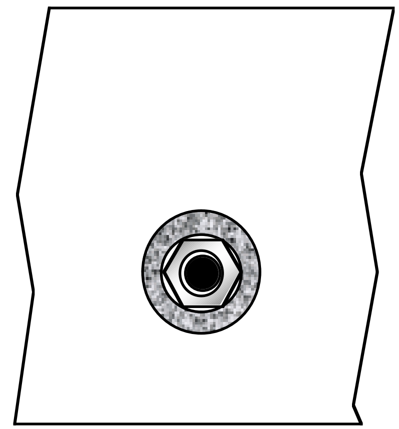


Figure 5-19

☐ Place the large knob on the encoder shaft. Push the knob on until it just touches the felt washer. If the knob does not spin freely, move it out slightly. If the knob is not contacting the felt washer at all, it may "drift" slightly once it stops spinning.

☐ Using the larger Allen wrench (5/64", 2 mm), tighten the two set screws alternately, in small increments.

ℹ At this point in the assembly, the pushbutton switches may not all protrude an equal distance. The switch height will become equalized once the front panel assembly is mated to the RF board in a later step.

6. RF Board

Most of the K2's receiver and transmitter circuits are located on the RF board, including filters, oscillators, and RF amplifiers. The front panel and control boards plug into the RF board, and the chassis pieces are designed to form a tight enclosure around it (see photos in Appendix D). In addition, many option boards plug directly into the RF board to minimize wiring.

Assembly and testing of the RF board is broken into three parts:

Part I: The DC and control circuits are installed so that the front panel and control boards can be plugged in and tested. The I/O controller (U1 on the RF board) is also installed and tested at this time. Once this phase of assembly is completed, you'll have the K2's built-in test equipment available for testing and aligning the remaining circuits.

Part II: Synthesizer and receiver components are installed and tested. By the end of Part II you'll have the K2 receiving on 40 meters.

Part III. Transmitter components and all remaining filter components are installed. The K2 is then aligned on all bands.

Components

Review anti-static precautions before handling transistors or ICs.

☐ Open the bag labeled **RF** and sort the components into related groups. In later steps you'll sort some of the components according to value to reduce the likelihood of assembly errors.

☐ Locate the RF board and place it in front of you with the component side up (the side with most of the parts), and the front edge facing you (the edge with the irregular cutouts). Throughout this section we'll refer to the different areas of the board in terms of their proximity to you. For example, "front-left" means the corner closest to you on the left.

☐ Take a moment to familiarize yourself with the RF board using Figure 6-1 to identify the major sections. If you flip the board over you'll see that there are a few components on the bottom of the board, primarily in the transmitter section.

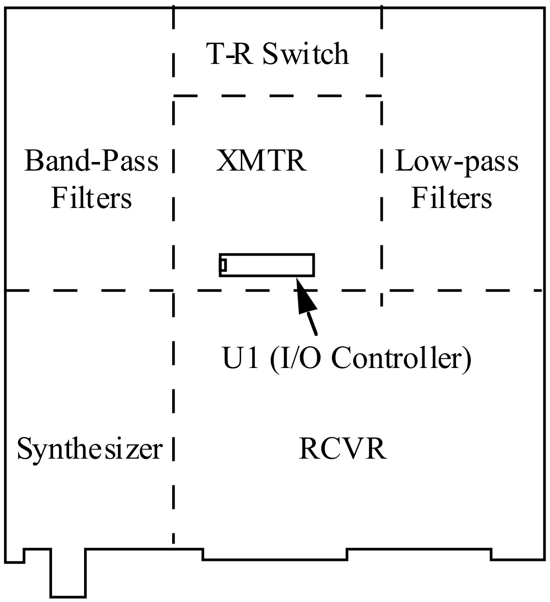


Figure 6-1

Assembly, Part I

☐ Locate a 2-D fastener and hold it vertically as shown in Figure 6-2. Looking at a side with two holes, note that the holes are offset from the center. When you install the fasteners in the following step, be sure to position them so that the holes in the fastener are shifted in the same direction as the holes in the PC board outlines on the bottom of the board.

☐ Turn the board over and install 2-D fasteners at five locations on the bottom of the RF board as shown in Figure 6-3. Secure each fastener from the top side of the board with two chassis screws and two #4 lock washers.

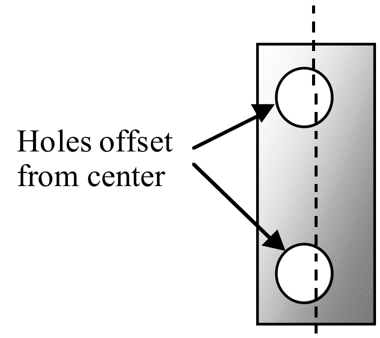


Figure 6-2

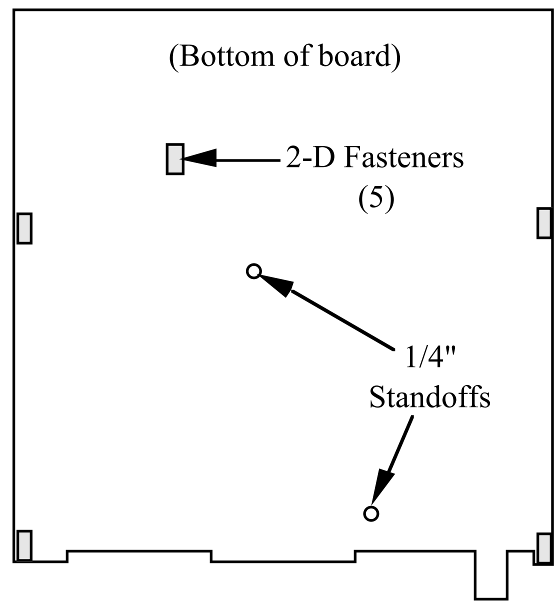


Figure 6-3

☐ Make sure that the 2-D fasteners on the edges line up with the edge of the PC board and do not hang over. If they hang over or do not match their component outlines, they are installed backwards.

☐ Install two 3/16" (4.8 mm) diameter by 1/4" (6.4 mm) long round standoffs on the bottom of the board at the locations identified in Figure 6-3. Secure these standoffs from the top side with chassis screws and #4 lock washers. *Do not put lock washers between the bottom of the board and the standoffs*.

☐ Turn the board back over to the top side. Install the 28-pin IC socket at U1, near the middle of the board (Figure 6-1). The notched end of the socket should be at the left. Make sure the socket is flat against the PC board before soldering. (U1 itself will be installed in a later step.)

In the following steps you will install the latching relays (K1-K17). *Relay pins must not be bent or trimmed*, even after placement on the PC board, as this may cause unreliable mechanical operation. Since the pins cannot be bent to hold the relays on the board, an alternative assembly technique using a flat surface must be used. For this technique to work, the relays must be installed before any of the taller components.

☐ Place relays K1-K17 on the top side of the RF board. One end of each relay has a heavy line printed across the top to indicate the pin 1 end. This end must be matched with the same end of the relay's PC board outline. Do not solder the relays yet.

☐ When all of the relays have been placed on the board, lay a flat object such as a book or piece of cardboard on top of the relays to keep them in place, then flip the board over.

☐ Solder only two pins (at opposite corners) on each relay. *Do not bend or trim relay leads.*

☐ Turn the board back over and verify that all of the relays are in the correct orientation and are seated flat on the board.

☐ Solder all of the remaining relay pins.

☐ Install R1 and R2 (220 ohms, RED-RED-BRN), near the back left corner of the board.

To avoid stray signal coupling, all capacitors on the RF board must be mounted as close to the PC board as possible (without damaging the leads or their epoxy coating).

☐ Install C1 and C2 (.001 µF, "102"), which are on the left edge.

☐ Install electrolytic capacitors C105 and C106 (2.2 µF), located near the front-left corner.

☐ Install R35 and R36 (82, GRY-RED-BLK) just to the right of C105.

☐ Install R115 (.05 ohms, 3 watts) at the front right corner of the board. Form the leads as indicated by the component outline.

☐ Install the following components to the left of R115.

__ C111, 2.2 µF electrolytic
__ R113, 82 (GRY-RED-BLK)
__ Q23, 2N7000

☐ Install the internal speaker connector, P5, which is a 2-pin connector like that shown in Figure 4-5. P5 is mounted near the on-off switch (S1). Position the connector as shown by its component outline, with the vertical locking ramp toward S1.

☐ Install diodes D10 and D12 (SB530), which are located on the right edge of the board. **Note**: A 1N5821 may be substituted.

☐ Install the following components near D10:

__ C77, .001 (102)
__ R69, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)
__ C196, .047 (473)
__ R66, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)

☐ Install the self-resetting fuse, F1, near D10. F1 is yellow and looks like a square-bodied capacitor. One side is labeled "G300".

☐ Install the key jack, J1, at the back-left corner of the board. Before soldering, make sure that the jack is aligned with its PC board outline.

☐ Install the headphone jack, J2, on the small board extension near the front left corner. The pins on J2 are not very long, so they will be nearly flush with the bottom of the board. Solder the pin closest to the front edge first (ground), then verify that the jack is seated flat on its plastic nubs before soldering the remaining pins.

☐ Install the power switch, S1, at the right front corner. (S1's key cap will be installed later.)

☐ Install the DC input jack, J3, at the back right corner. The 3 leads on the jack must be lined up with the slot-shaped holes in the component outline. If the holes are a tight fit, press firmly until the connector snaps into position.

☐ Install the antenna jack, J4 (BNC), just to the left of J3.

☐ Install the following components near U1 (at the middle of the board). You may need to confirm the part number of U2 (78L06), since it is easy to confuse it with U8 (78L05). Use a magnifying glass if necessary.

__ U2 (78L06)	__ C139, 0.1 (104)
__ C140, .001 (102)	__ R64, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)

☐ Install the ceramic resonator, Z5, just below U1. (The ceramic resonator looks like a capacitor with three pins.)

☐ Install R65 (10 k, BRN-BLK-ORG) on the bottom of the board, near U1.

ⓘ In the steps that follow you'll install the connectors that mate with the control and front panel boards. These connectors must be installed properly to ensure reliable mechanical connection. They are very difficult to remove once installed, so follow all instructions carefully. **Review Figure 3-3 for correct placement.**

☐ Install the 6-pin, single-row female connector, J6, which is just left of the power switch. It must be seated vertically on the board and must not be tilted (Figure 6-4). Solder just one pin near the center of J6.

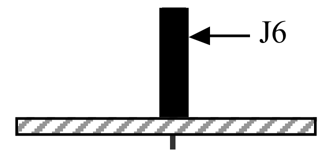


Figure 6-4

☐ If J6 does not appear to be completely flush with the board, re-heat the soldered pin and press down. Once it is installed correctly, solder the remaining pins.

☐ Install the 20-pin, dual-row female connector, J8, near the front left corner of the board. Use the same technique you used for J6. This connector must be seated flush with the board before soldering.

☐ Install 36-pin dual-row female connector J7 in the same manner as J6 and J8.

☐ Position 20-pin male right-angle connector P1 on the **bottom** of the board (Figure 6-5), but do not solder P1 yet. **Review Figure 3-3 for correct placement.** The short ends of the bent pins are inserted into the holes, and the long ends must be parallel with the board.

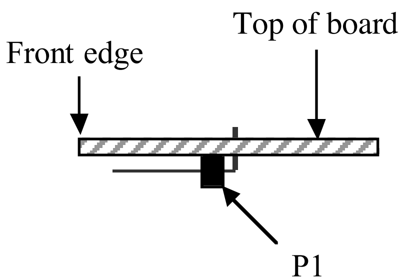


Figure 6-5

☐ Solder just the two end pins of P1.

☐ Look closely at P1 to make sure that its plastic support is pressed down as far as it will go, and that the pins are parallel to the board. If not, re-heat the soldered ends while pressing it into place. Once it is seated properly, solder the remaining pins.

☐ To the left and right of the I/O controller, U1, you'll find two short jumpers labeled "GND" (on the top side of the board). Install 3/4" (19 mm) U-shaped ground jumpers at these locations as you did on the control and front panel boards. Use discarded component leads.

☐ On the bottom of the board you'll find two additional ground jumpers, one near the middle and the other near the back edge. Install U-shaped ground jumpers in these two locations.

Before handling U1, touch an unpainted, grounded metal surface or put on a conductive wrist-strap.

☐ Install the I/O controller, U1 (PIC16C72), in its socket (near the middle of the board). Be sure to align the notched or dimpled end of U1 with the notched end of the socked (to the left). Make sure U1 is seated as far down in the socket as it will go and that none of its pins are bent.

Visual Inspection

☐ Examine the RF board carefully for unsoldered pins, solder bridges, or cold solder joints.

☐ Set switch S1 on the RF board to the "OFF" position. (Plunger OUT is OFF, plunger IN is ON.)

Resistance Checks

☐ Perform the following resistance checks.

Test Point	Signal Name	Res. (to GND)
R115, right end (near S1)	12V IN	> 500 ohms
U1 pin 1	6V	> 500 ohms
U1 pin 4	K13 control	> 20 k
U1 pin 9	OSC1	> 20 k
U1 pin 10	OSC2	> 20 k
U1 pin 28	AUXBUS	> 20 k
R1 (end near R2)	DOT/PTT	> 1 M
R2 (end near R1)	DASH	> 1 M

When working with the side panels in the following steps, place a soft cloth on your work surface to protect the paint.

☐ Locate the two side panels. Remove any masking tape from the panels using the same technique described in the Front Panel section, taking care not to scratch the outer surfaces.

☐ Arrange the two panels as shown in Figure 6-6, and verify that they are mirror images of each other. The 2-D fasteners to be attached in the next step go on the *inside* surface, which has bare aluminum areas that were masked during painting.

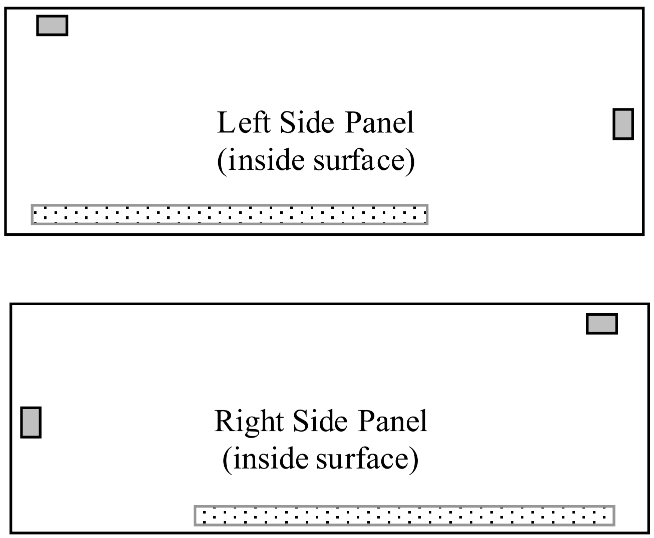


Figure 6-6

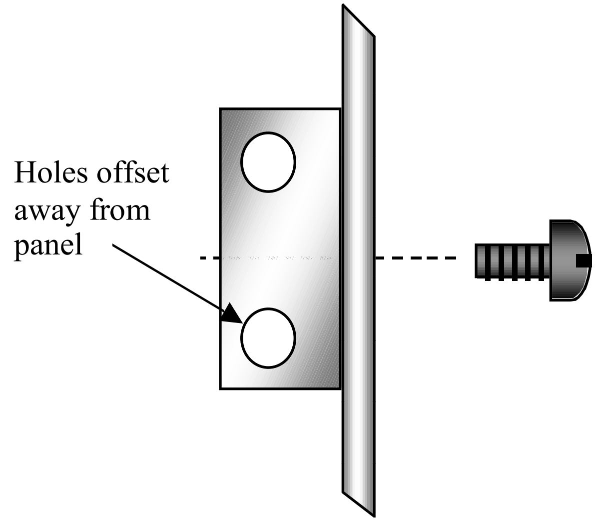


Figure 6-7

☐ Install two 2-D fasteners on each side panel at the locations indicated by small rectangles in Figure 6-6. Use one chassis screw to hold each fastener to the side panel (see Figure 6-7). The two unused holes on each fastener must be offset *away* from the side panel.

ⓘ Since the K2 chassis is made up of a number of individual panels and fasteners, you may need to loosen the fasteners and readjust them once or twice during assembly.

☐ Attach the side panels to the RF board using two chassis screws per side panel. The side panels are attached to the 2-D fasteners that are already in place on the RF board. Figure 6-8 shows the approximate location of the two screws used to secure the right side panel.

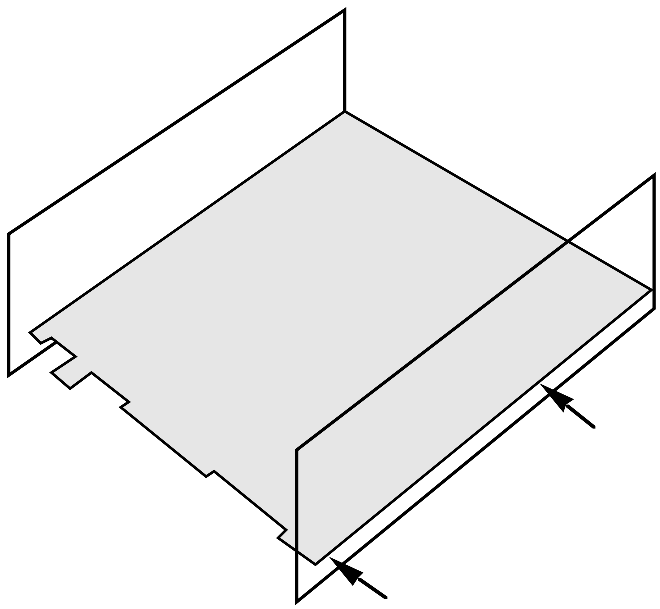


Figure 6-8

☐ Locate the tilt stand, which can be found in the **MISCELLANEOUS** component bag. It has three parts: two oval feet and a tilt bail (Figure 6-9). Note: the screws that will be used to hold the tilt bail in place are not the black anodized type. They are standard steel/zinc plated screws, 7/16" (11 mm) long, so you won't confuse them with the 3/8" (9.5 mm) or 1/2" (12 mm) black screws.

☐ Remove any masking tape from the bottom cover chassis piece.

☐ Each oval foot has a notch into which the bail will be inserted. Install one of the oval feet on the bottom cover using two 7/16" (11 mm) 4-40 screws, #4 lock washers, and 4-40 nuts. The notch in the foot should be facing inwards (toward the other foot). The nuts and lock washers go on the *inside* of the bottom cover.

☐ Install the tilt bail, then the second oval foot. The bail should be compressed firmly between the two feet. You may need to adjust the positions of the feet slightly before tightening the hardware.

☐ Make sure the two feet are at exactly the same distance from the front edge of the bottom cover. If they are not equally spaced, the tilt stand may "rock" when in use.

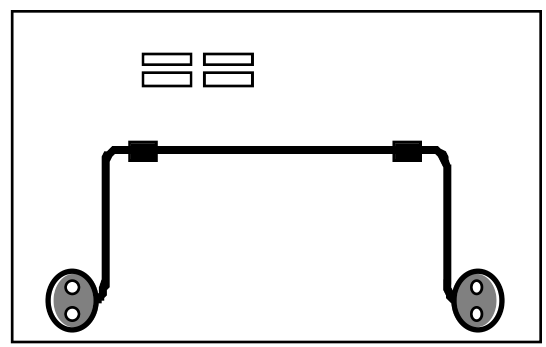


Figure 6-9

☐ Turn the RF board/side panel assembly upside down. Check for any untrimmed component leads on the bottom of the board.

☐ Position the bottom cover as shown in Figure 6-10, then secure it using six chassis screws. (The heat sink and rear feet will not be installed until Part III when the transmitter is assembled.)

☐ With the entire assembly still upside down or resting on one side panel, plug the front panel assembly into the RF board (Figure 6-10). Align the two assemblies so that connector J1 on the bottom of the front panel PC board mates with P1 on the bottom of the RF board. The arrow in Figure 6-10 shows the approximate location of P1 on the RF board.

☐ Once the front panel assembly is in place, the headphone jack (on the RF board) should be just flush with the front panel. The small rubber pads in the upper corners of the front panel board should be just touching the 2-D fasteners on the RF board. If this is not the case, the front panel must be pushed farther in.

☐ Secure the front panel to the side panels and RF board using 4 chassis screws. (Refer to the photos in Appendix D.) You may need to make slight adjustments to the 2-D fasteners at the top edge.

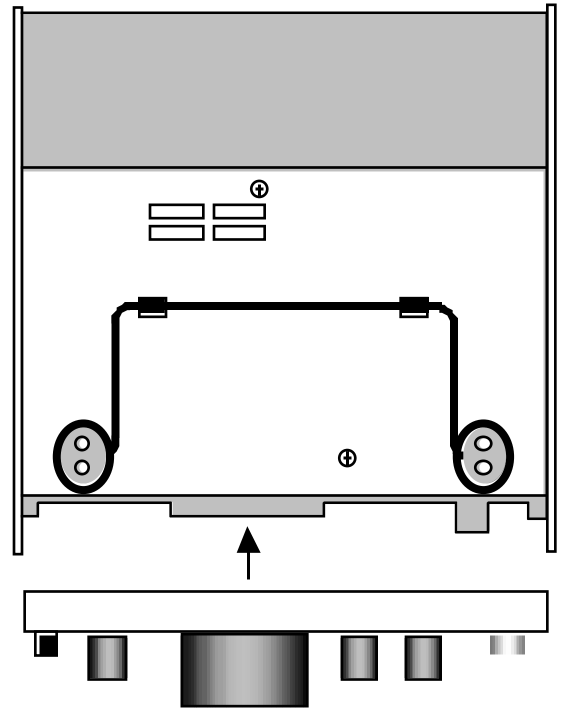


Figure 6-10

☐ Plug the control board assembly into the RF board, with the component side of the control board facing backwards. (Refer to the photos in Appendix D.) All three connectors on the control board must be lined up with the three connectors on the RF board at all pins.

☐ Make sure the control board is pushed as far down as it will go; it should be flat against the RF board along its entire edge, with all three connectors properly mated.

ⓘ If the control board does not plug in easily, you may have one or more connectors installed incorrectly.

☐ The long-handled Allen wrench can be used to extract the control board (Figure 6-11). To the left of J7 on the RF board you'll find the label "LIFT" near a hole at the base of the control board. Insert the Allen wrench into this hole, then rest the knee of the wrench on the nearby screw head. Pry the board up with the wrench while guiding the board out at the top.

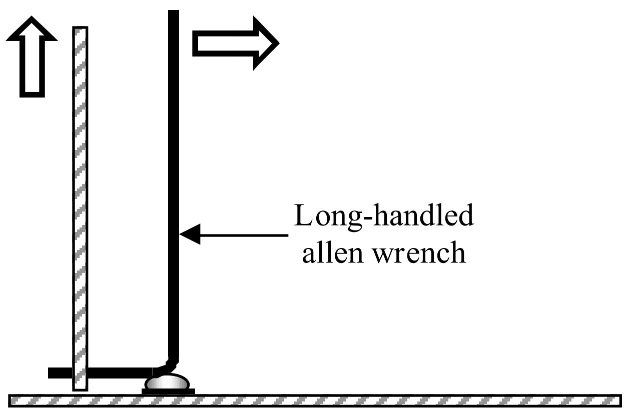


Figure 6-11

☐ Once you have tried the control board extraction technique described above, plug the control board back in for the tests that follow.

☐ Secure the front panel and control boards together using two chassis screws (Figure 6-12). The upper left and right corners of the control board may be touching the 2-D fasteners, or there may be a small gap.

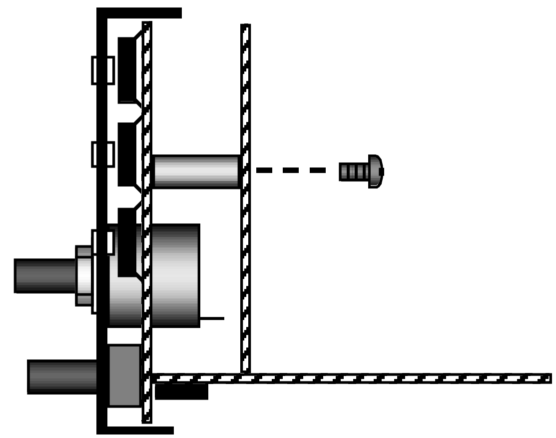


Figure 6-12

☐ Push the black keycap onto S1's plunger until it snaps into place. Test S1's action (push on, push-off). Leave the switch in the OFF position (out).

Alignment and Test, Part 1

In this section you'll test most of the circuits on the control board and front panel. Along the way you'll become familiar with basic operation of the K2, including use of the front panel switches, display, and menu.

☐ Before proceeding with initial test, turn to the first page of the Operation section of the manual to familiarize yourself with the K2's front panel layout. *Do not turn on power to the K2 at this time.*

The Tap/Hold Rule

Each of the push-button switches on the front panel has two functions, one activated by a TAP (short press) and the other activated by a HOLD (long press, about 1/2 second). The upper label on each switch shows the TAP function (white lettering), and the lower label shows the HOLD function (yellow lettering). To highlight this in the text, we use two different typographical styles to identify switches: **TAP** and **HOLD** .

Initial Test

ⓘ If any test or alignment step fails, refer to the Troubleshooting section (Appendix E).

☐ Set the controls on the front panel as follows:

AF GAIN:	midway (12 o'clock)
RF GAIN:	maximum (clockwise)
KEYER:	midway
POWER:	minimum (counter-clockwise)
OFFSET:	midway

☐ Set the voltage selector slide switch on the control board toward the "12V" label.

☐ For the remaining test and alignment steps, you'll need a well-regulated 12-14 V power supply or a battery. A power supply rated at 300 mA or more of output current will suffice for the tests in Parts I and II, but higher currents (3-3.5 A) will be needed for transmitter tests in Part III.

☐ If your power supply or battery does not already have a plug that mates with the power jack (J3), use the supplied mating plug and prepare a suitable power cable. The center lead of the plug is positive (+).

☐ Make sure the K2 is turned OFF (power switch S1 out). Plug your power supply or battery into J3 on the rear panel.

☐ Fold the tilt stand out to improve the viewing angle if desired.

ⓘ *If you see or smell smoke when you turn the K2 on for the first time, turn off power and disconnect the power supply immediately.* Normally, you should hear the relays being reset by the I/O controller. Next, nonvolatile configuration memory (EEPROM) will be initialized. This process takes approximately 10 seconds. During this period, you should see **INFO 201** on the LCD. Displays of this kind are referred to as "INFO messages," and are used to alert you to possible problems. In this case, the info message is just a reminder that EEPROM has been initialized.

☐ Turn on the K2 using S1. After about 10 seconds, you should see the default K2 frequency display for 40 meters: **7100.00c**. The letter *C* indicates CW mode. The annunciator for VFO A will also be turned on. (If you see any other INFO messages or the display does not come on, refer to Troubleshooting.)

☐ Turn the K2 off and wait for a few seconds, then turn it back on. The display should now show **ELECRAFT** for about two seconds, followed by the frequency display. Now that the EEPROM is initialized, this is the display you should always see on power-up. The "R" and "T" in "ELECRAFT" appear in lower-case letters due to the limitations of the seven-segment LCD characters.

☐ Tap the **DISPLAY** button once to select voltage/current display. The display should now show something similar to this:

E12.0 i0.06

This would indicate that the power supply voltage (E) is about 12.0 V, and the supply current (I) is about 60-80 mA.[6]

Optical Encoder Test

☐ Tap the **DISPLAY** button to return to the frequency display.

☐ Turn the VFO knob in both directions and verify that the displayed frequency changes accordingly.

☐ Tap the **RATE** button to the right of the knob to change the tuning rate, and repeat the VFO test at each rate.

Relay Test

☐ Tap the **BAND+** button. You should see the band change to the next higher band. At the same time, you'll hear one or more relays.

☐ Tap the **BAND+** button 7 more times to verify that you hear relays being switched with each band change.

The 160 m (1.8 MHz) band does not appear in the list. It will not be available unless the 160 m/RXANT option is installed.

[6] The supply voltage reading will reflect a small drop across D10, the reverse-polarity protection diode, typically 0.2 V on receive and 0.3 V on transmit. Accuracy of both current and voltage readings is about +/- 5%.

☐ Tap the **PRE/ATTN** button three times. You should hear relays switch each time.

Voltmeter Probe Assembly (Optional)

If you do not have a DMM (digital multimeter), you can use the simple DC voltage probe shown below in conjunction with the built-in voltmeter. The crimp pin and 2-pin housing can be found in the **MISCELLANEOUS** components bag.

☐ Assemble the voltage probe as shown in Figure 6-13 using green-insulated hookup wire. No ground connection is needed since you will be measuring voltages inside the K2.

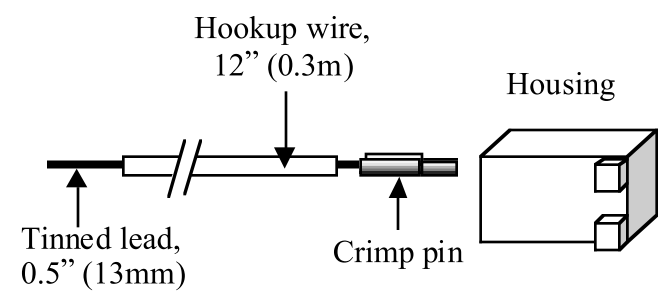


Figure 6-13

☐ Plug the voltage probe assembly into P5 on the control board. The probe should be oriented so that the hookup wire is connected to the (+) side of P5.

☐ Move the voltage select switch on the control board toward P5. Select voltage/current display mode using the **DISPLAY** switch. The voltage reading on the LCD should go to **00.0**.

☐ To test the voltage probe, touch the tinned end of the hookup wire to pin 1 of the I/O controller, U1 (RF board). The voltage displayed on the LCD should be approximately 6 V.

☐ Return the voltage select switch on the control board to the "12 V" position.

Note: Always disconnect the voltage probe when it is not in use. You should not leave it connected inside the K2 during normal operation, since it may cause shorts or unwanted noise pickup.

Menu Tutorial

We'll present a brief tutorial on using the menu here, since you'll be using the K2 calibration features for some alignment steps. You'll find complete menu details in the Operation section, including a list of all menu functions.

Tap the **MENU** button on the K2. The first menu entry will be displayed:

ST L 040

This is the sidetone level *menu entry*. **040** is the associated *parameter*, in this case the sidetone volume setting. The row of *annunciators* under **ST L** serves as an underline, reminding you that turning the VFO knob will change the menu entries.

Tap the **MENU** button again and you'll return to the frequency or voltage/current display, depending on what display mode was selected when you entered the menu.

Tap **MENU** again to bring up the menu. Turn the VFO knob now, and you'll see the other menu entries and their parameters scroll by. (You can also tap the **BAND+** or **BAND-** buttons to scroll through menu entries.) Scroll the menu until you see

INP HAND

This menu entry is used to select the keying device. **HAND** means that the key jack is configured for a manual hand key or external keyer.

Press and hold the **EDIT** button for 1/2 second to activate the EDIT function. (Remember the TAP/HOLD rule: when you HOLD a button in, you activate the function indicated by the lower label on the switch.) The display should now show:

INP HAND

Notice that the underline has moved to the parameter (**HAND**). This tells you that you're in EDIT mode, and that turning the VFO knob will now change the parameter for the current menu entry. You can also change the parameter using **BAND+** and **BAND-**.

Turn the VFO knob now to see the various keying input selections. **PDLn** and **PDLr** configure the key jack for a keyer paddle, wired for either normal (tip = dot) or reverse (tip = dash) operation.

Tap the **MENU** button again to exit EDIT mode. The underline should return to the menu entry.

Using the Calibration Functions

Scroll the menu until you see **CAL OFF**. This is the entry point into the calibration sub-menu, which you'll be using during alignment.

Enter EDIT mode by holding **EDIT** as before, moving the underline to the **OFF** parameter. Then turn the VFO knob to see the various **CAL** functions, including **FCTR** (frequency counter), **CUR** (transmit current limiting) **S HI** / **S LO** (S-meter calibration), **FIL** (crystal filter configuration), and **PLL** (VFO calibration).

Once you select a **CAL** function, holding **EDIT** again activates the function. The selected **CAL** function remains active until you tap **MENU** again, which returns you to the menu. Another tap of **MENU** returns you to the normal K2 display.

In the following section you'll activate the **CAL FCTR** (frequency counter) function. For now, just tap **MENU** once or twice to return to the normal display.

Frequency Counter Probe Assembly (Required)

☐ In the bag labeled **MISCELLANEOUS** you'll find the components for the frequency counter probe (Figure 6-14). These components include a 10 pF axial-lead capacitor, two crimp pins, a 2-pin housing, and a 1-pin male connector (probe tip).

☐ Cut a 6" (15 cm) length of RG-174 cable and carefully remove 1/2" (13 mm) of the coax jacket from each end. Be careful not to nick the braid while scoring the outer insulation.

☐ Separate the braid from the center conductor at both ends. Remove 1/4" (6 mm) of insulation from each center conductor. At one end, cut the braid off completely right at the coax jacket (a ground connection will not be needed for frequency measurements). The braid should be twisted into a fine bundle at the other end.

☐ Solder crimp pins onto the center conductor and shield at the housing end of the cable. Solder quickly, so that the heat from soldering does not melt the center insulator of the coax and cause a shield-to-center short.

☐ Insert the pins into the crimp housing as shown in Figure 6-14. They should snap into place. Each crimp pin has a small tab on the back that latches into a hole in the housing.

☐ Trim the leads of the 10 pF axial-lead capacitor down to 1/4" (6 mm). Solder one end to the center conductor of the coax cable.

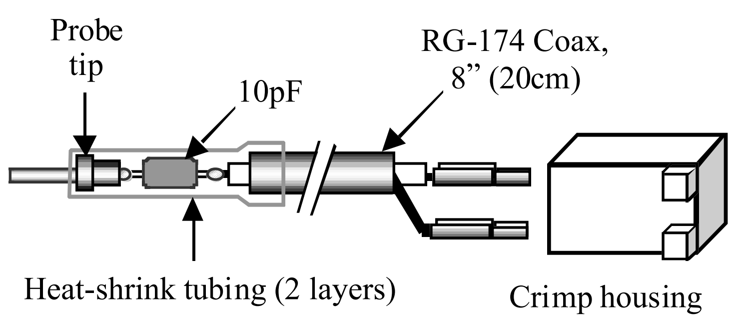


Figure 6-14

☐ Solder the probe tip to the other end of the 10 pF capacitor.

☐ Slip a 1" (2.5 cm) length of heatshrink tubing onto the probe tip components. Shrink the tubing using a heat gun. (You can also use a soldering iron, but avoid melting the tubing.)

☐ Add a second, identical length of heatshrink tubing on top of the first, then shrink it. This strengthens the assembly.

☐ Plug the frequency counter probe assembly into P6, which is at the far left end of the control board (as viewed from the front of the transceiver). The connector can only be plugged in one way.

☐ Turn on the K2 and tap **MENU** to bring up the menu, then scroll to the **CAL** menu entry. Hold **EDIT**, then scroll the **CAL** parameter until the display shows **CAL FCTR**. Hold **EDIT** again to activate the frequency counter function of the **CAL** sub-menu. The LCD should show **0000.00**. (The frequency counter circuitry is sensitive, so it may pick up a stray signal and show it on the display.)

☐ To test the counter, you can read the frequency of the 4 MHz oscillator on the control board. Touch the counter probe tip to the left side of trimmer capacitor C22, which is just below the 16C77 microprocessor. The LCD should now read very close to **4000.00**.[7]

☐ Remove the frequency counter probe.

Audio Amplifier and Tone Generator Test

☐ Plug in a pair of low-impedance (4 to 32 ohm) headphones, stereo or mono.

☐ Tap **MENU** and scroll to the sidetone level menu entry (**ST L**). Hold **EDIT** to activate the sidetone. You should now hear a clean 600-Hz audio tone. Turning the VFO knob should vary the volume.

☐ Notice that turning the AF GAIN control does *not* affect the sidetone volume. The sidetone is injected into the AF amplifier after the volume control, so AF GAIN affects only the receiver volume.

☐ Tap **MENU** to turn off the sidetone, then scroll up to the sidetone pitch menu entry (**ST P**) using the VFO knob or by tapping the **BAND+** button. The display will show

ST P 0.60

This indicates that the sidetone pitch is set for **0.60** kHz (600 Hz). Hold **EDIT** to turn on the sidetone, then vary the VFO knob. The pitch of the sidetone should change to match the display.

Keyer

In the following steps you'll test the keyer (audio tone generation only). This tests the keyer jack, speed control, and potentiometer read circuits, including the A-to-D converter on the microcontroller.

☐ Tap **MODE** until *C* is displayed at the right end of the LCD, indicating CW mode.

☐ Plug a keyer paddle into the key jack. The plug must be stereo (2 circuit). A mono plug will key the transmitter continuously. (A mating stereo plug for the keyer jack is supplied with the kit.)

☐ Using the menu's **INP** entry, set up the keyer input for either **PDLn** or **PDLr** as described previously.

☐ Adjust the KEYER control. As soon as you turn it, the display should show the keying speed (approx. 9-50 WPM).

☐ While listening with headphones, test the keyer paddle to verify that both dot and dash are working.

Note: No sidetone will be generated when LSB or USB mode is selected (*L* or *U*).

[7] This is not a valid indication of how well the 4 MHz oscillator is calibrated, since this oscillator is used as the reference for the frequency counter itself. The 4 MHz counter will be calibrated in a later step.

S-Meter Alignment

The bargraph S-meter zero and sensitivity will be coarsely set in the following steps. This procedure tests most of the AGC circuitry on the control board, as well as the LED bargraph and its drive circuits. S-meter settings will probably have to be fine-tuned later when you setup the crystal filters.

☐ Using the menu, select the **CAL S LO** function (S-meter zero). Activate it by holding **EDIT** a second time as described previously. A typical value for CAL S LO is about 173.

☐ Turn the VFO knob until you see only the left-most segment of the LED bargraph lit. Then turn the knob a bit more clockwise until this LED just turns off.

☐ Exit the **CAL S LO** function by tapping **MENU**. Enter the menu again and select **CAL S HI** (S-meter full-scale sensitivity). A typical value for CAL S HI is 25.

☐ Turn the RF GAIN control fully counter-clockwise (minimum gain). Adjust the VFO knob until you see segment 9 of the bar graph lit, then turn it a bit more counter-clockwise until segment 10 just turns on (right-most segment).

☐ Turn the RF GAIN control back to its full clockwise position. The bargraph LEDs should all be off when you get to maximum gain. You can repeat **CAL S LO** and **CAL S HI** if necessary to be sure that both the zero and full-scale readings are correct.

☐ Exit the **CAL S HI** function by tapping **MENU**.

Bargraph Current Test

In the following steps, you'll test the current measurement circuit by using the bargraph LEDs to establish a known current drain. This also tests the bargraph LED brightness control circuit.

☐ Enter the menu and verify that **GRPH** (LED bargraph mode) is set to **DOT**, not to **BAR** or **OFF**.

☐ Set the RF GAIN control for minimum gain. Segment 10 of the LED bargraph should now be on if you have done the S-meter adjustment as described above.

☐ Using the menu, select the **LCD** menu entry. Change the parameter from **NITE** to **DAY**. At this point you'll see the LCD backlight turn off, and segment 10 of the LED bargraph will become much brighter.

☐ Exit the menu and tap **DISPLAY** to switch to voltage/current mode. Write down the voltage and current readings.

☐ Use the menu to change the **GRPH** mode to **BAR**. All 10 segments of the LED should now be on.

☐ Exit the menu and check the current. It should now be about 0.16 to 0.18 amps higher.

☐ Use the menu to change **GRPH** back to **DOT**, and **LCD** back to **NITE**.

ⓘ As you can see, the combination of **LCD DAY** and **GRPH BAR** can result in high peak current drain on receive. When operating from a battery, **DOT** or **OFF** should be used to conserve power. More information about conserving power is provided in the Advanced Operating Features section.

Assembly, Part II

In this section you'll install the components for the synthesizer and receiver circuits. Most of the components to be installed are on the front half of the board (see Figure 6-1).

After all of the parts are installed, individual stages will be aligned and tested. Detailed troubleshooting procedures are provided in the Troubleshooting section should you need them (Appendix E).

In some steps a large number of components will be installed, then soldered as a group. You should check for unsoldered leads after completing each group, but you'll also do a careful examination of the entire board in the final steps to catch any pins that may have been missed.

☐ Remove the screws holding the control board to the front panel board, then unplug the control board. To avoid damaging any control board components, use the long-handled Allen wrench as described in Part I.

☐ Remove the bottom cover (six screws).

☐ Remove the screws from the front panel assembly and unplug it from the RF board. Pull it straight out from the bottom edge, near the middle of the panel. This may be easier to do with the transceiver sitting on its right side so that you can steady it with one hand and pull with the other.

☐ Remove the side panels by taking out the two screws along the bottom edge of each panel.

☐ Sort all of the remaining 1/4-watt resistors by value before installing them in the next step. This will lessen the chance of an assembly error and decrease time spent hunting for each value.

☐ Install the following 1/4-watt resistors, orienting them so that the first band is at the left or toward the back of the board. The resistors are listed in the order they appear on the RF board, starting with R9 (near the left edge, about halfway back).

Note: Remember to complete each line of resistors before proceeding to the next line (i.e., install R9, then R16, then R10).

__ R9, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL) ⇒	__ R16, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)
__ R10, 1 k (BRN-BLK-RED)	__ R31, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)
__ R32, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)	__ R33, 15 k (BRN-GRN-ORG)
__ R30, 120 (BRN-RED-BRN)	__ R28, 27 k (RED-VIO-ORG)
__ R20, 270 (RED-VIO-BRN)	__ R21, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)
__ R22, 3.3 M (ORG-ORG-GRN)	
__ R25, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)	__ R24, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)
__ R15, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)	__ R14, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)
__ R13, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)	__ R12, 560 (GRN-BLU-BRN)
__ R17, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)	__ R11, 560 (GRN-BLU-BRN)
__ R5, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)	__ R78, 22 (RED-RED-BLK)
__ R6, 100 (BRN-BLK-BRN)	__ R7, 68 (BLU-GRY-BLK)
__ R8, 100 (BRN-BLK-BRN)	
__ R92, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)	__ R91, 820 (GRY-RED-BRN)
__ R93, 820 (GRY-RED-BRN)	
__ R72, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)	__ R95, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)
__ R96, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)	__ R74, 47 (YEL-VIO-BLK)
__ R73, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)	__ R97, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)
__ R80, 680 (BLU-GRY-BRN)	__ R81, 1.8 k (BRN-GRY-RED)
__ R82, 18 (BRN-GRY-BLK)	__ R101, 10 k (BRN-BLK-ORG)
__ R107,100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)	__ R111 5.6 k (GRN-BLU-RED)
__ R112, 22 (RED-RED-BLK)	__ R90, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)
__ R89, 100 (BRN-BLK-BRN)	__ R88, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)
__ R84, 18 (BRN-GRY-BLK)	__ R85, 150 (BRN-GRN-BRN)
__ R83, 4.7 ohms (YEL-VIO-GLD)	

☐ Install the resistor networks. Start with RP2, which is in the front left-hand corner. Align the pin 1 mark on each resistor network with the pin 1 end of its component outline.

__ RP2, 10 k, 8 pins (8A3.103G)
__ RP3, 10 k, 8 pins (8A3.103G)
__ RP6, 100 k, 8 pins (8A3.104G)
__ RP4, 100 k, 6 pins (6A3.104G)
__ RP5, 100 k, 6 pins (6A3.104G)

☐ Locate all of the small glass-bodied diodes. You should have a number of 1N4148 diodes, and one 1N5711, which will be similar in size but should have different markings. Use a piece of masking tape to identify the 1N5711 as "D9, 1N5711."

☐ Install the following diodes, starting with D18 in the front-left corner. Be sure to orient the diodes according to their outlines.

__ D18, 1N4148	__ D11, 1N4148	__ D6, 1N4007
__ D7, 1N4007	__ D13, 1N4148	

☐ Varactor diodes have a small plastic package, like a TO-92 transistor, but with only two leads. Sort the varactor diodes into groups: type MV209 and type 1SV149. (1SV149 diodes are labeled "V149" and may have a center lead that has been cut flush with the body of the device.) *The K2 will not function correctly if the varactor diode types are interchanged.*

☐ Install the MV209 diodes listed below. The flat side of each diode must match the flat side of its PC board outline. These diodes must be pushed all the way down on the board to prevent stray signal coupling. Bend the leads slightly to hold them in place. D16 and D23-D26 are in the front-left corner. D39 is to the right of J7 (control board).

__ D16	__ D23	__ D24
__ D25	__ D26	

__ D39

☐ Install type 1SV149 diodes at D37 and D38, near the SSB option connector. Keep them flat against the PC board, with no excess lead length.

☐ Install the remaining 1SV149 diodes listed below, keeping them flat against the PC board, with no excess lead length. D17, D21 and D22 are in the front-left corner. D29 through D34 are on the right side near the crystal filter.

__ D17	__ D21	__ D22
__ D29	__ D30	__ D31
__ D32	__ D33	__ D34

☐ Install the TO-92 package transistors listed below. Start with Q17, near the middle-left edge.

__ Q17, 2N7000	__ Q16, PN2222A	__ Q18, J310
__ Q19, J310	__ Q20, 2N7000	__ Q24, J310

☐ Install Q21 (2N5109), which is located near U1 in the middle of the board. Align the small tab on the transistor's case with the tab on its component outline. Bend the leads on the bottom to hold Q21 in place, then solder.

☐ Install Q22 (2N5109), which is to the right of the "ELECRAFT" label. Make sure Q22 is flat against the board before soldering.

☐ Carefully press a 3/4" (19 mm) diameter by 0.25" (6.4 mm) tall star heat sink onto Q22. The heat sink should be pressed all the way down as far as it will go, and should be positioned so that it doesn't touch the components around the transistor. You may need to spread the heat sink apart slightly using a screwdriver as you guide it on.

☐ Install Q12 (2N7000), which is to the right of Q22.

☐ Install C167 (.001 µF, "102"), which is near J11, the connector for the SSB adapter. The leads on this capacitor should be formed to match its PC board outline.

☐ Sort all of the remaining capacitors by value to reduce the possibility of assembly errors in the next step. If you are unsure of any capacitor's value and do not have a capacitance meter, the pictures in the parts list (Appendix A) may help.

☐ Install the following capacitors, starting with C86 in the front-left corner. Integer values are in pF and fractional values are in µF.

__ C86, 0.1 (104) ⇒	__ C84, 120 (121) ⇒	__ C85, 120 (121)
__ C100, .001 (102)	__ C95, .01 (103)	__ C96, 1 µF (105)
__ C70, 4.7 pF (4.7)	__ C71, 82 (82)	__ C72, 270 (271)
__ C73, 47 (47)	__ C74, 20 (20)	
__ C82, .001 (102)	__ C80, .001 (102)	__ C81, .001 (102)
__ C79, .001 (102)	__ C59, 0.1 (104)	__ C38, .001 (102)
__ C55, .01 (103)	__ C61, .01 (103)	__ C58, .01 (103)
__ C65, 0.1 (104)	__ C54, .01 (103)	
__ C68, 10 pF (10)	__ C64, .001 (102)	__ C67, 0.1 (104)
__ C63, .01 (103)	__ C92, .022 (223)	__ C94, 0.047 (473)
__ C89, .001 (102)	__ C87, .01 (103)	__ C175, .01 (103)
__ C62, .01 (103)	__ C154, 270 (271)	__ C144, 100 (101)
__ C156, .047 (473)	__ C158, .01 (103)	__ C53, .01 (103)
__ C52, .01 (103)	__ C141, .01 (103)	__ C57, .001 (102)
__ C146, .01 (103)	__ C151, 0.1 (104)	__ C145, .01 (103)
__ C153, 68 (68)	__ C155, .01 (103)	__ C172, .01 (103)
__ C177, .022 (223)	__ C174, 82 (82)	__ C173, 220 (221)
__ C178, 0.1 (104)	__ C176, 0.1 (104)	__ C165, .01 (103)
__ C169, 390 (391)	__ C168, .01 (103)	__ C160, .01 (103)
__ C159, .01 (103)	__ C143, .01 (103)	__ C142, .01 (103)
__ C163, .01 (103)	__ C162, .047 (473)	__ C164, .01 (103)
__ C170, .047 (473)	__ C166, .047 (473)	__ C180, 10 (10)
__ C182, 180 (181)	__ C184, .01 (103)	__ C185, 0.1 (104)
__ C181, .01 (103)		

☐ Install the following ICs, aligning the notched end of each IC with the notch on its component outline. U6 is at the front-left.

__ U6, LMC662 ⇒	__ U5, LTC1451 ⇒	__ U4, MC145170
__ U3, LT1252	__ U10, NE602	__ U9, LT1252
__ U11, NE602	__ U12, MC1350	

☐ Install U8 (78L05), which has a plastic TO-92 package like a transistor. U8 is located near the front left corner of the board.

☐ Option-bypass jumpers W5, W2 and W3 are located on the right side of the board, near the crystal filter. Use component leads to make these jumpers, or remove the insulation from appropriate lengths of green hookup wire. These jumpers should be formed so that they lie flat on the board, and should not touch any adjacent components.

☐ Test points TP1, TP2, and TP3 are round, yellow, single-pin female connectors. TP1 and TP3 can be found in the synthesizer area of the board. TP2 is near the SSB option connector, J11. Install and solder all three test points.

☐ Install RF choke RFC13 (100 µH, BRN-BLK-BRN), near the middle of the board. Orient the first color band to the left.

☐ Install the receive mixer, Z6 (TUF-1), below the "ELECRAFT" label at the middle of the board. Make sure that Z6 is lined up with its component outline and is flush with the board before soldering.

☐ Install the electrolytic capacitors in the order listed below, starting with C60 near the far left-hand edge. Insert the (+) lead of each capacitor into the hole with the (+) symbol.

__ C60, 100 µF	__ C93, 10 µF	__ C103, 220 µF

☐ Locate the crystals used on the RF board: 12.096 MHz (2), 4.915 MHz for BFO (2) and 4.915 MHz for crystal filters (7). The BFO and filter crystals are bagged separately. Do not mix them.

☐ The bag of 7 filter crystals should have a number written on it. Record the number here: ___________. (This identifies the tested frequency of the crystals, and can be used in aligning the CW filter.)

☐ Install the two 12.096 MHz crystals, X1 and X2, at the lower left. The crystals should be seated flat on the board before soldering (it is OK to bend the pins to hold them to the board).

☐ To the left of X1 and X2 (along the edge of the board) you'll find pads for grounding the crystal cases. Use short lengths of bare wire to ground the crystals on at the top of the can.

☐ Install the BFO crystals at X3 and X4 (near J7). **Important:** trim **X3's** leads, and fold them down flat against their pads, before soldering. Then use a minimal amount of solder. *This is necessary to avoid interference between X3 and L33 in a later step.*

☐ Install the remaining 4.915 MHz crystals at X5 through X11.

☐ Ground the cases of X3-X11. The ground pads for X3 and X4 are to the left of the crystals. Those for X5 and X6 are near where the two crystals meet. X7-X11 each have a ground pad to the right of the crystal. **Do not use the holes on the left side of X7-X11.**

☐ Sort the slug-tuned shielded inductors into two groups: 1 µH ("T1050", quantity 4) and 4.7 µH ("T1005", quantity 8).

☐ Install 4.7 µH inductors at L30 and L34 ("T1005"). Press these inductors down as far as they'll before soldering.

ⓘ In the following steps you'll install several toroidal inductors. They must be wound as indicated in the instructions, or the transceiver will not operate correctly. **Use only the number of turns indicated in each step. Do not attempt to alter the turns to match the inductances specified in the parts list.**

☐ Sort the black and dark gray toroidal cores into three groups to avoid mis-identifying them in later steps. You should have seven FT37-43 ferrite cores (3/8", 9.5 mm); four T44-10 iron powder cores (0.44", 11 mm); and one FT50-43 ferrite core (0.5", 12.7 mm). The ferrite cores are dark gray; the T44-10 cores are black.

☐ Locate a 3/8" (9.5 mm) diameter ferrite toroidal core (type FT37-43) as described above.

☐ Find RFC14's component outline on the RF board, near the front left-hand corner. Compare this component outline to Figure 6-15, which shows two views of a typical toroidal inductor. RFC14 will be mounted vertically as shown at the right side of the drawing, with one wire exiting at the core's upper left, and the other at the lower right. There are pads on the PC board in these two locations.

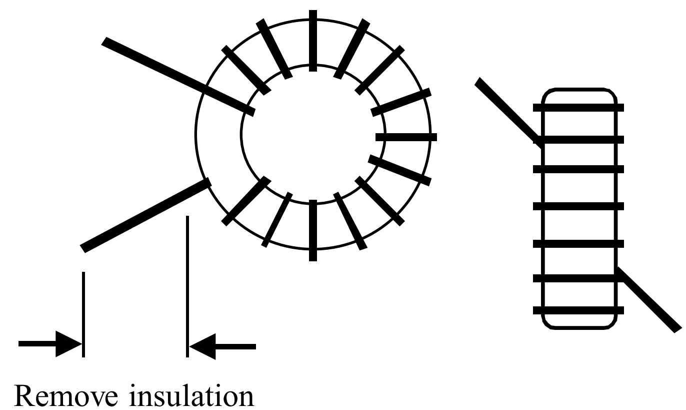


Figure 6-15

Note: Toroid illustrations such as the one above do not always show the actual number of turns used.

☐ To wind RFC14, cut a 9" (23 cm) length of #26 red enamel-coated wire, then "sew" the long end of the wire through the core exactly 10 times. *Each pass through the core counts as one turn.* The finished winding should look very similar to Figure 6-15, but with 10 turns rather than 14.

☐ Verify that the turns of RFC14 are not bunched together. They should be evenly-spaced and occupy about 85% of the core's circumference. If the turns are all bunched together, RFC14's inductance value will not be correct. (Unless otherwise specified, about 80 to 90% of the core should always be used.)

Stripping Toroid Leads

Th enamel wire supplied with the kit can be heat-stripped. One way to do this is to place a small amount of solder (a "blob") on the end of your soldering iron, then insert the wire into the hot solder for a few seconds. Another possibility is to burn the insulation off by heating it with a match or small butane lighter for a few seconds, then use fine-grain sandpaper to remove the enamel residue. Avoid scraping insulation off with a razor blade, as this may nick the wire.

☐ Strip and tin the leads of the toroid before you mount it on the board. As shown in Figure 6-15, you should remove the enamel from the leads up to about 1/8" (3 mm) from the core. You should see only bare wire (no insulation) on the side to be soldered.

☐ Install RFC14 vertically as shown by its component outline, near the front left-hand corner of the board, then pull the leads taut on the bottom of the board.

☐ Solder the leads of RFC14. When soldering, make sure that the solder binds well to the leads. If the lead appears to be an "island" in a small pool of solder, chances are it is not making good contact. Measure from pad to pad (not wire to wire) using an ohmmeter to be sure the leads are making contact.

ⓘ **Do not use adhesives or fixatives of any kind to secure toroids to the PC board.**. Toroids will be adequately held to the board by their leads alone. (T5 is the only exception.)

☐ RFC16 is wound on an FT37-43 core (gray) using 16 turns of red enamel wire (12", 30 cm). Wind this inductor in the same manner as RFC14. Install RFC16 vertically, to the right of RFC14.

ⓘ T5 is a toroidal *transformer*, with two numbered windings. These numbers are printed next to each pad on the PC board. T5's windings are 1–2 and 3–4.

☐ You should have two yellow toroid cores. Set aside the smaller yellow/red core (T44-8), which will be used later. T5 will be wound on the larger yellow core (T50-6, 1/2" [12.7 mm] diameter).

☐ Wind the first winding, 1-2, using 16 turns of red enamel wire (15", 38 cm). This winding must occupy 85% of the core, and will look very similar to Figure 6-15. Remember that each pass through the core counts as one turn.

☐ Carefully strip and tin the leads of T5's 1-2 winding.

☐ T5's other winding, 3–4, uses 4 turns of *green* enamel wire (7", 18 cm). Wind the 3–4 winding on top of the 1–2 winding, interleaving the turns as shown in Figure 6-16. The turns should be secure, not loose. Strip and tin the leads of the 3–4 winding.

Note: T5's 3–4 winding must be wound exactly as illustrated or the VFO will not function correctly.

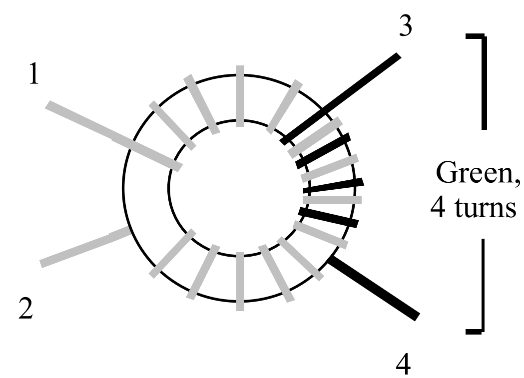


Figure 6-16

☐ Install T5 as shown by its component outline in the synthesizer area of the board. Figure 6-17 shows how the 1–2 and 3–4 windings are oriented with the numbered pads. (Also shown are the nylon washer and screw, which will be installed in the next step.) Pull T5's leads taut on the bottom of the board, but do not solder yet.

☐ Secure T5 to the board as shown in Figure 6-17 using a 3/8" (9.5 mm) diameter nylon washer, 1/2" (12.7 mm) long nylon 4-40 screw, and a #4 nylon nut. Tighten the nylon nut just enough to hold the assembly in place. Do not over-tighten as this will strip the threads. Solder T5, checking for good solder joints as before.

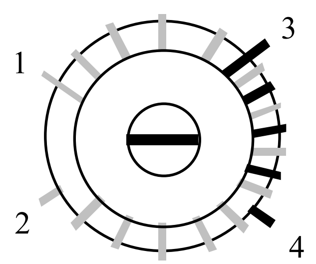


Figure 6-17

☐ T7 is a toroidal transformer wound on a 3/8" (9.5 mm) diameter ferrite core (dark gray, FT37-43). T7's orientation and windings will appear similar to Figure 6-18. Wind T7's 3–4 winding first, using 20 turns of red enamel wire (20", 51 cm). (The drawing shows 14 turns.)

☐ Wind T7's 1–2 winding using 5 turns of green enamel wire (6", 15 cm). Strip and tin the leads of both windings.

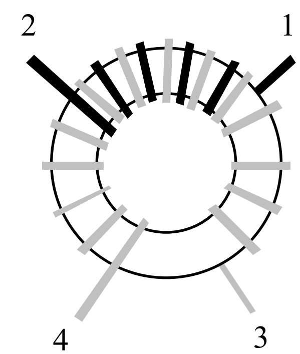


Figure 6-18

☐ Install T7 as shown by its component outline near the front-right corner of the board, with the windings oriented as shown in Figure 6-18. Pull the leads taut on the bottom and solder.

☐ Transformer T6 is mounted vertically, near the middle of the board. It uses a different winding technique where the wires for the two windings are twisted together before winding ("bi-filar"). Cut two 12" (30 cm) lengths of enamel wire, one red and one green. Twist them together over their entire length. The wires should cross over each other about once every 1/2" or 12 mm.

☐ Wind the twisted wires onto a 3/8" (9.5 mm) ferrite core (FT37-43), using exactly 10 turns. Use the same method you used when winding non-twisted wires, covering about 85% of the core. Figure 6-19 shows how the winding should look from two views (your turns count will be 10 rather than 8 as in the drawing).

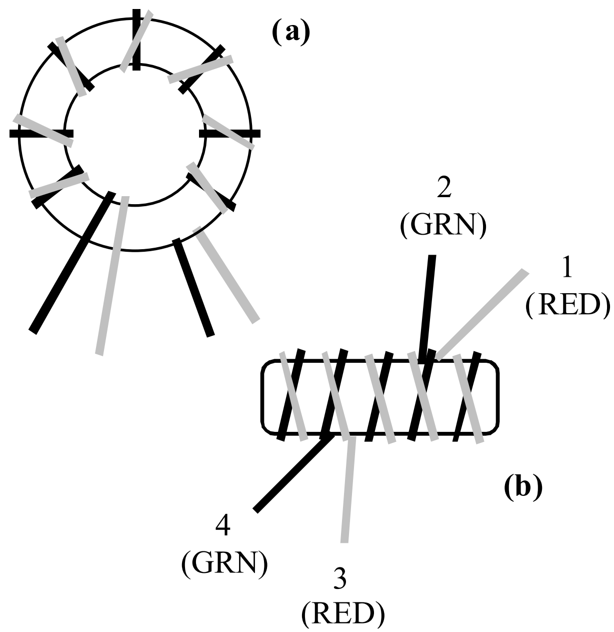


Figure 6-19

☐ When winding is completed, clip and untwist the ends of the red/green pairs so that the leads of the transformer look like those in Figure 6-19 (b). The pin numbers shown match the component outline, with the red wires numbered 1-3 and the green wires numbered 2-4.

☐ Strip and tin all four wires. Be very careful not to strip the leads so close to the core that the red/green wire pairs might short together.

☐ Install T6 vertically, with the numbered wires inserted as indicated in Figure 6-19 (b). Pull the leads taut on the bottom, then solder.

☐ Install the components listed below, starting with C39 in the back left corner (near the key jack). Orient the components as you have in previous steps.

__ C39, .001 (102)	__ C4, 820 (821)
__ C5, 100 (101)	__ C9, .001 (102)
__ C6, 4.7 pF (4.7)	__ C7, 100 (101)
__ C8, 820 (821)	__ C108, .01 (103)
__ W6 (option bypass jumper)	__ D1, 1N4007
__ R38, 1 k (BRN-BLK-RED)	__ D2, 1N4007
__ RFC1, 100 µH (BRN-BLK-BRN)	
__ C107, .01 (103)	__ C109, .01 (103)
__ C110, .01 (103)	__ D3, 1N4007
__ D5, 1N4007	__ D4, 1N4007
__ R37, 100 k (BRN-BLK-YEL)	__ R39, 1 k (BRN-BLK-RED)
__ C113, .01 (103)	__ C114, .01 (103)
__ W1 (option bypass jumper)	

☐ **Review Figure 4-2 before installing Q2 in the next step.** Q2 is a ZVN4424A transistor, which has a slightly modified TO-92 package. It is flat on both sides, and the labeling may be on the smaller flat side. The *wider* flat side must be aligned with the flat side of the component outline.

☐ Install Q2, which is near C113 (just installed). Be sure to orient Q2 as shown in Figure 4-2.

☐ RFC3 is wound on an FT37-43 core (dark gray) using 16 turns of red enamel wire (12", 30 cm). Wind this inductor in the same manner as RFC14. Install RFC3 vertically as shown on the board, just to the left of jumper W1.

☐ Install 4.7 µH slug-tuned shielded inductors (marked "T1005") at L1 and L2, near the back-left edge of the board.

☐ Install the 40-meter low-pass filter components, which are listed below. These components are located just above Q22 (2N5109 transistor with heat sink). L25 and L26 are wound on T44-2 cores (red) using 16 turns of red enamel (15", 38 cm).

__ C225, 470 (471)	__ C227, 470 (471)	__ C226, 820 (821)
__ L25	__ L26	

ⓘ The leads of some bottom-mounted components should be pre-trimmed before mounting and soldering. Please review the instructions on Page 11 (**Top/bottom interference**).

☐ Turn the RF board upside-down, with the front edge still facing you. Install the following components on the bottom side of the board, starting with C207 at the back left. Once all components have been installed, solder them on the top side, being careful not to damage any adjacent top-mounted components.

__ C207, .001 (102)	__ C216, .001 (102)	__ C223, .001 (102)
__ C204, .001 (102)	__ C208, .001 (102)	__ C195, .001 (102)

(continued)

__ C133, 0.1 (104) (bend body of cap toward PC board before soldering)

__ C135, .01 (103)	__ C122, 56 (56)	__ C119, .01 (103)
__ C17, .001 (102)	__ C27, .001 (102)	__ C104, 68 (68)

__ R34, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)

__ RFC2, 100 µH (BRN-BLK-BRN)
__ RFC7, 15 µH (BRN-GRN-BLK)

☐ Locate L31, a 10 µH shielded solenoidal inductor (black case; may not be color coded). L31 is mounted on the bottom of the board, near the right edge. When soldering L31, be careful not to damage diode D18, which is on the top side near one of L31's leads.

☐ Install the group of components listed below on the bottom of the board. C183 is near the front left corner.

__ C183, .01 (103)	__ C161, .01 (103)	__ C150, 330 (331)

__ C90, .047 (473) (bend body down before soldering)
__ C157, .047 (473) (bend body down before soldering)

__ R79, 1.8 k (BRN-GRY-RED)	__ R77, 220 (RED-RED-BRN)
__ R76, 10 (BRN-BLK-BLK)	__ R75, 680 (BLU-GRY-BRN)

__ R99, 270 (RED-VIO-BRN)	
__ R94, 82 (GRY-RED-BLK)	__ R98, 270 (RED-VIO-BRN)
__ R100, 820 (GRY-RED-BRN)	__ R18, 1 M (BRN-BLK-GRN)

__ RFC11 and __ RFC12, 100 µH (BRN-BLK-BRN)

__ D36, 1N4007

__ RFC10, 1 mH (BRN-BLK-RED)

L33 is located on the bottom of the board, near the front panel connector, P1. It will be wound on a T44-8 (yellow/red) toroid core. Previously, a standard solenoidal RF choke was used at L33[8]. L33 still has a rectangular component outline on the board.

☐ Locate the T44-8 core for L33 (yellow/red, 0.44" diameter [11 mm]). Also locate the #28 enamel wire (bagged separately), and the 0.5" diameter rubber stem bumper (black).

☐ Wind **40 turns** of #28 enamel wire (30", 76 cm) on the T44-8 core, leaving two 3" (8 cm) leads.) *Wind the turns very tightly, with no gaps.* The winding will look like Figure 6-20, but with 40 turns (28 are shown). The drawings of L33 are shown as if there were a gradual color transition in the wire. This is necessary to clarify the special winding technique used in the next step.

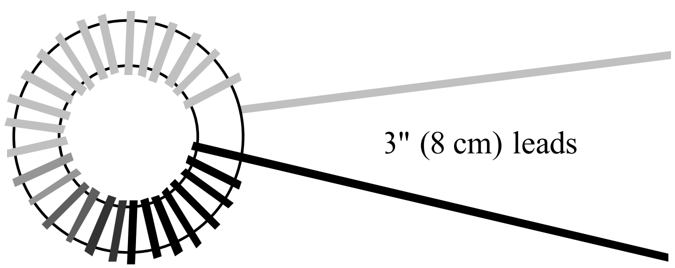


Figure 6-20

☐ Three more turns must now be wound with each long lead. The first 3-turn winding is shown in Figure 6-21 (dark-colored lead). The turns should continue in the same direction, *overlapping the opposite end*, and should be wide-spaced. The second 3-turn winding is shown in Figure 6-22 (a) (light-colored lead). The two leads should end up on opposite sides the core.

☐ Prepare L33's leads so that they're stripped and tinned cleanly up to about 1/8" (3 mm) from the core.

[8] The use of a toroid here was found to reduce BFO signal radiation.

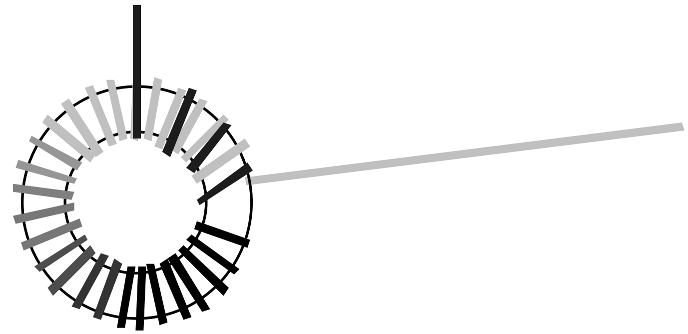


Figure 6-21

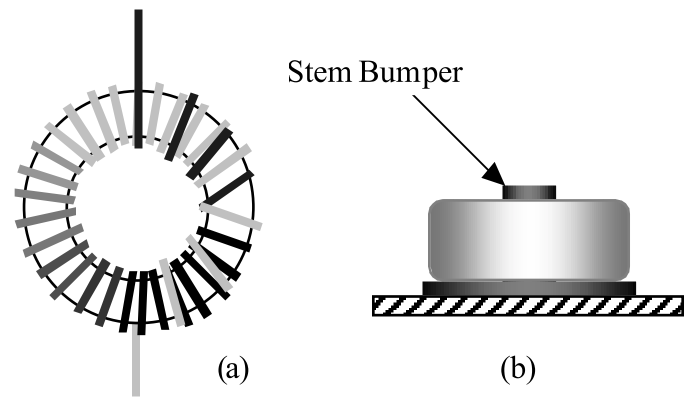


Figure 6-22

☐ Place the rubber stem bumper directly over the center of the component outline for L33. Trim the leads of all nearby parts so the stem bumper can sit nearly flat on the PC board.

☐ Press L33 down onto the stem bumper. See Figure 6-22 (b). The stem should protrude slightly from the top of the core.

☐ Insert L33's leads into the holes provided near the component outline. Pull them taut on the top side of the PC board and solder.

☐ Verify that L33's leads are holding the core firmly in place.

Visual Inspection

☐ Examine the bottom (solder side) of the RF board carefully for unsoldered pins, solder bridges, or cold solder joints. Since this is a large board, you should break the examination up into three parts:

__ perimeter of the board __ front half __ back half

☐ Examine the top (component side) of the RF board for unsoldered pins, solder bridges, or cold solder joints. This step is necessary because some components are installed on the bottom of the board.

☐ Make sure switch S1 on the RF board is in the OFF position. (Plunger OUT is OFF.)

Resistance Checks

☐ Perform the following resistance checks:

Test Point	Signal Name	Res. (to GND)
R115, right end (near S1)	12V IN	> 500 ohms
U6 pin 8	8B	> 100 ohms
U4 pin 16	5B	> 1 k
U11 pin 8	8A	> 250 ohms
U10 pin 8	8T	> 500 ohms
U12 pin 1	8R	> 500 ohms

ⓘ It is very important to re-assemble the chassis as described below before attempting the alignment steps in the next section. If you don't put the chassis together, some alignment steps will not be accurate.

☐ Install the two side panels and secure with two chassis screws each.

☐ Plug in the front panel assembly. Secure the front panel with four chassis screws.

☐ Plug in the control board.

☐ Secure the front panel and control boards together using two chassis screws.

ⓘ Before installing the bottom cover in the following step, verify that all components on the bottom of the RF board have an installed height of 1/4" (6 mm) or less. Capacitors that stand above this height must be bent downward at an angle to prevent them from hitting the bottom cover.

☐ Install the bottom cover and secure it temporarily using six chassis screws.

Alignment and Test, Part II

In this section you'll test and align the PLL (phase-locked-loop) synthesizer and receiver circuits. Once this is completed you'll be able to test the receiver using all modes on 40 meters.

☐ Connect your power supply or battery and turn on the K2.

4 MHz Oscillator Calibration

☐ Plug the frequency counter probe into P6 (control board).

☐ Connect the probe tip to the PLL reference oscillator test point, TP3 (left-front corner of the RF board, near U4).

☐ Using the menu, select **CAL FCTR**, then hold **EDIT** a second time to enable the frequency counter. The counter should show a frequency of 12090 kHz +/- 30 kHz. If it is 0000.00, changing rapidly, or out of range, you could have a problem with the counter probe or the PLL Reference Oscillator.

☐ Use one of the following methods to adjust C22 on the control board (listed in order of preference):

- Connect a calibrated external frequency counter probe to TP3, *without* removing the K2's internal counter probe. Adjust C22 until the K2's reading matches the external counter's reading.
- Alternatively, you can use a calibrated short-wave or ham-band receiver. Set the receiver for LSB or USB mode. Connect a short length of wire to the receiver's antenna jack, and lay the end near the 4 MHz crystal on the K2 control board. Find the oscillator signal on the receiver. Tune the receiver to 4.000 MHz, and adjust C22 until you hear a zero-beat (pitch = 0 Hz).
- If you don't have a counter or receiver, leave C22 set at its mid-point for now. You can improve the calibration later using a calibrated signal generator or an on-air signal, such as WWV (at 10.000 MHz).

PLL Reference Oscillator Range Test

☐ Set up the K2 internal counter as described for **4 MHz Oscillator Calibration** (at left, first three steps).

☐ If you have an external frequency counter probe connected to TP3 along with the K2's internal counter probe, disconnect it.

☐ When you're in frequency counter mode, the **BAND+** and **BAND-** buttons can be used to check the range of the PLL reference oscillator. First, tap **BAND+** and write down the frequency reading below (typically about 12100 kHz). Then tap **BAND-** and write down this frequency reading (typically 12080-12090 kHz).

Ref. High Freq.	Ref. Low Freq.	Range (kHz)
____________	____________	__________

☐ Subtract the lower frequency reading from the higher reading. The range should be between 11.5 and 25 kHz (if not, see Troubleshooting). Tap **MENU** to exit **CAL FCTR**.

VCO (Voltage-Controlled Oscillator) Test

☐ Use **BAND+** or **BAND-** to select the 80-meter band, and set the VFO for a frequency of about 4000.10 kHz.

☐ Connect the frequency counter probe to the VCO test point, TP1. Activate the frequency counter using **CAL FCTR** as before.

☐ You should now see a frequency counter reading in the 8 to 10 MHz range. It may or may not be stable at this time (i.e., the frequency may be changing). If the reading is 0000 kHz or is changing rapidly, you probably don't have the counter cable connected to the VCO test point. If the reading is fairly stable but not between 8 and 10 MHz, refer to Troubleshooting.

☐ Tap **MENU** to exit **CAL FCTR**.

VCO Alignment

In the following steps you'll adjust the VCO inductor (L30) so that the VCO control voltage is in the proper range.

☐ Disconnect the internal frequency counter probe and remove it completely from the K2.

☐ Select 80 meters, and set the VFO for about 4000 kHz.

☐ Connect a DMM (digital multimeter) to the left end of resistor R30 (near the center of the synthesizer area of the RF board) and ground. Use a small alligator clip to ensure a good connection. (You can also use the built-in voltmeter to measure the VCO control voltage. Refer to Voltmeter Probe Assembly in Part I.)

ⓘ It is possible to damage the slugs in slug-tuned inductors if you use a metal tool or if you tune the slug too far in or out. The tuning tool provided will not damage the slugs.

☐ Using the wide end of the plastic tuning tool, adjust the slug in inductor L30 until the voltage at R30 reads 6.0 V. If the voltmeter reading does not change at all as you tune L30 through its full range, refer to Troubleshooting. If the voltage changes but you cannot get to 6.0 V, you have probably wound the VCO inductor (T5) incorrectly or have installed the wrong value at L30 or C72.

☐ Set the VFO for approximately 3500 kHz.

☐ Measure and write down the VCO control voltage at this frequency in Table 6-1 (using pencil).

☐ For each remaining band, set the VFO to the low and high frequencies listed in Table 6-1 and write down the VCO control voltages.[9] (You can tune quickly to the approximate frequencies in the table by selecting the 1-kHz tuning rate.)

[9] Usable VFO coverage extends well beyond the ranges given in the table. 15 MHz is used as the upper boundary on 20 meters to allow reception of WWV at this frequency.

Table 6-1. VCO Voltage Readings

Band	Low Freq.	Voltage	High Freq.	Voltage
80 m	3500	______	4000	______
40 m	7000	______	7300	______
30 m	10000	______	10150	______
20 m	14000	______	15000	______
17 m	18000	______	18200	______
15 m	21000	______	21450	______
12 m	24800	______	25000	______
10 m	28000	______	28800	______

☐ If some VCO control voltage readings above are < 1.5 V, *or* some of them are > 7.5 V, you may be able to shift the entire set of readings so that they are all within the 1.5 to 7.5 V range. Switch to the band (and frequency) that had the highest or lowest voltage, then adjust L30 to bring that reading into range. Then re-measure all of the voltages to make sure they're in range.

ⓘ If you have some voltages that are < 1.5 V and others that are > 7.5 V, you have probably installed the wrong value at one or more of the VCO capacitors (C70-C74) or varactor diodes (D21-D26). Another possibility is that T5 has the wrong number of turns or that you installed the wrong type of slug-tuned inductor at L30. If you change any of these components, repeat the VCO alignment procedure.

☐ Disconnect the DMM from R30.

☐ Connect the internal frequency counter probe to the BFO test point, TP2 (right side of the RF board, near the crystal filter).

BFO Test

The BFO (beat-frequency oscillator) will be tested in the following steps.

☐ Switch to the 40-m band.

☐ Connect the frequency counter to the BFO test point (TP2), which is on the right side of the RF board near the crystal filter.

☐ Using the menu, select **CAL FCTR**. The counter should show a frequency between 4910 and 4918 kHz.

ⓘ If you see a reading of **0000.00** kHz or one that is changing rapidly, you may not have the frequency counter probe connected properly, or the BFO may not be working (see Troubleshooting). If you see a stable frequency reading that is nowhere near 4913 kHz, you may have installed the wrong crystals in the BFO (X3/X4).

☐ When you're in frequency counter mode, the **BAND+** and **BAND-** buttons can be used to check the range of the BFO. First, tap **BAND+** and write down the frequency reading below (typically about 4916-4917 kHz). Then tap **BAND-** and write down this frequency reading (usually about 4911-4912.5 kHz). Finally, calculate the BFO range (high - low) in kHz. Typical range is 4 to 6 kHz.

BFO High Freq. ___________ (must be >= 4916.3 kHz)

BFO Low Freq. ___________ (must be <= 4912.7 kHz)

Range (High - Low) ___________ (must be >= 3.6 kHz)

If your BFO range is less than 3.6 kHz, you may have the wrong varactor diodes installed at D37 or D38, or the wrong crystals installed at X3 or X4.

If the BFO range is adequate but the frequencies are shifted too high or too low, it may be due to one of the following:

- If you didn't calibrate the K2's internal frequency counter using an external counter, it may not be reading accurately. If possible, borrow an accurate counter and re-do the **4 MHz Oscillator Calibration**.
- If your internal counter *is* calibrated, the BFO range shift could be due to the inductance of L33 being too high or too low. If the frequency range is shifted *down*, L33 may have too many turns; remove one turn from each end of the winding. If the range is shifted *up*, L33 may have too few turns. However, before attempting to re-wind L33 with more turns, try adding a small amount of capacitance in parallel with C174 (82 pF). You can go as high as 200 pF total at C174, if necessary. The additional capacitor can be soldered to the bottom of the board.

BFO Alignment

The K2 uses a variable-bandwidth crystal filter, allowing the operator to set up as many as four filter bandwidths for each operating mode. Each of these filter configurations requires an appropriate BFO setting, which determines the pitch you hear.

Filter and BFO set up is done with the **CAL FIL** calibration function. **CAL FIL** is described in detail in the Operation section of the manual, under Calibration Functions. Rather than duplicate this information here, the instructions and example in the Operation section will be used.

☐ Make sure the bottom cover is securely attached.

☐ Tap **PRE/ATT** until the **PRE** annunciator is turned on. (Turning the preamp on will provide some background noise so you can hear the effect of changing filter bandwidths.)

☐ Follow all instructions on page 85 to become familiar with the **CAL FIL** function.

☐ Perform the steps in the example on page 86 to set up all filters. You'll use the filter and BFO data from Table 8-1 (for a CW-only K2), since the SSB adapter is not installed. If you later install the SSB adapter, you can easily change the settings to take advantage of the optimized, fixed-bandwidth SSB filter.

VFO Linearization (40 meters)

☐ Make sure the bottom cover is securely attached.

☐ Allow the K2 to stabilize for at least 5 minutes at room temperature (approx. 20-25°C).

☐ Connect the internal frequency counter cable to the VCO output test point (TP1).

☐ Use the procedure listed below to linearize the VFO on 40 meters. If you see any **INFO** messages, refer to Troubleshooting.

1. Use **BAND+** or **BAND-** to select 40 meters. Select CW normal mode and filter FL1.
2. Set the VFO to 7000.10 kHz.
3. Enter the menu and select **CAL PLL**, then hold **EDIT** a second time to start the VFO linearization sequence.
4. The frequency counter will show the VCO frequency as it decreases through a 5 kHz range.
5. When calibration is completed (1 to 2 minutes), you'll see the message **End** on the LCD. You can then tap any button to return to normal operation. If you see an INFO message rather than **End**, refer to Troubleshooting (Appendix E).

I.F. Amplifier Alignment

L34 is a slug-tuned inductor, located near the right front corner of the RF board, very close to the Control board. The label for L34 may be difficult to see with the Control board plugged in.

☐ Using the wide end of the plastic tuning tool, adjust the slug in L34 until it is near the top of the can. **Stop turning the slug when it appears to be at the top or when you feel resistance.**

☐ Turn L34's slug one full turn clockwise (down into the can).

☐ Set the band to 40 meters using BAND+ or BAND-. Select CW Normal and FL2.

☐ Make sure the RF GAIN control is fully clockwise (max. gain). Disconnect the antenna from J4, if one was connected.

☐ Tap PRE/ATTN until the PRE annunciator turns on.

☐ Connect a pair of headphones (stereo or mono) to the front panel jack, and turn the AF GAIN control to about midway.

☐ Slowly tune the VFO to locate the weak internally-generated signal near 7000 kHz. If you can't hear the signal at all, you may have a receiver problem. Try the 40-meter Band Pass Filter Alignment, below, then refer to Troubleshooting if necessary.

☐ While listening to the weak signal at 7000 kHz, adjust L34 for the best signal strength and lowest noise. The best overall setting typically occurs at 1-2 turns below the top of the can.

40-Meter Band Pass Filter Alignment

☐ Connect an antenna or a low-level signal generator to the antenna jack on the rear panel. If you use a signal generator, set it for approx. 7150 kHz at an output level of about -100 dBm, or strong enough to activate the S-meter. If you're using an antenna, tune in a signal in the range of 7100-7200 kHz if possible. If you cannot find a signal, you can use atmospheric noise from the antenna to peak the filter.

☐ Using the plastic tuning tool, adjust both L1 and L2 (back left corner) for peak signal strength. You may be able to use the bargraph if the signal is strong enough. If you do not hear any signals or noise, see Troubleshooting.

In CW mode, the frequency shown on the display takes into account an offset equal to your sidetone pitch. This allows you to determine a station's actual carrier frequency by matching their pitch to your sidetone, rather than by zero-beating the signal. The SPOT button can be used for this purpose.

This completes 40-meter receiver alignment. You may wish to become familiar with the K2's receiver features before proceeding (see Operation). In Part III you'll install the remaining band-pass filters and align the transmitter and receiver on all bands.

Assembly, Part III

In this final RF board assembly section you'll install the transmitter components, as well as the remaining band-pass and low-pass filters. This will allow you to align and test the K2 on all bands.

☐ Turn off the K2 and disconnect the power supply.

☐ Remove the two screws holding the front panel board to the control board, then unplug the control board. Use the long-handled Allen wrench as described in Part I.

☐ Remove the bottom cover.

☐ Remove the screws from the front panel assembly and unplug it from the RF board.

☐ Remove the side panels by taking out the two screws along the bottom edge of each panel.

☐ Install the following 1/4-watt resistors, starting with R46 which is just to the left of I/O controller U1.

__ R46, 270 (RED-VIO-BRN) ⇒	__ R45, 47 (YEL-VIO-BLK)
__ R59, 4.7 k (YEL-VIO-RED)	__ R61, 120 (BRN-RED-BRN)
__ R49, 120 (BRN-RED-BRN)	__ R40, 470 (YEL-VIO-BRN)
__ R41, 560 (GRN-BLU-BRN)	__ R55, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)

__ R53, 4.7 ohms (YEL-VIO-GLD)
__ R56, 33 (ORG-ORG-BLK)
__ R54, 4.7 ohms (YEL-VIO-GLD)
__ R62, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)
__ R67, 1.5 k, 1% (BRN-GRN-BLK-BRN)
__ R68, 226 ohms, 1% (RED-RED-BLU-BLK)

ⓘ The 150 pF and 3.3 pF capacitors to be installed below may be hard to identify. See markings details on page 8.

☐ Install the capacitors listed below. C12 is near the back left corner. Integer values are in pF; fractional values are in µF. Note: C13 and C14 will not be installed; they are included with the 160 m/Receive Antenna option.

__ C12, 560 (561) ⇒	__ C11, 1800 (182) ⇒	__ C26, .001 (102)
__ C16, 1800 (182)	__ C15, 560 (561)	__ C22, 3.3 pF (3.3)
__ C20, 47 (47)	__ C19, 330 (331)	__ C30, 330 (331)
__ C24, 47 (47)	__ C25, 330 (331)	__ C35, 56 (56)
__ C37, .001 (102)	__ C36, 330 (331)	__ C33, 3.3 pF (3.3)
__ C49, .001 (102)	__ C31, 56 (56)	__ C42, 220 (221)
__ C43, 33 (33)	__ C48, 220 (221)	__ C47, 33 (33)
__ C45, 2 pF (2)	__ C115, .01 (103)	__ C117, .047 (473)
__ C118, .01 (103)	__ C116, 33 (33)	__ C121, 0.01 (103)
__ C120, .01 (103)	__ C131, 0.1 (104)	
__ C124, 0.1 (104)	__ C130, 0.1 (104)	__ C128, 680 (681)
__ C129, .01 (103)	__ C127, 680 (681)	__ C191, 1800 (182)
__ C190, 1200 (122)	__ C197, 100 (101)	__ C198, 27 (27)
__ C210, 82 (82)	__ C211, 10 (10)	__ C218, 150 (151)
__ C219, 12 (12)	__ C138, .047 (473)	__ C222, 100 (101)
__ C221, 39 (39)	__ C220, 220 (221)	__ C214, 68 (68)
__ C213, 33 (33)	__ C212, 150 (151)	__ C203, 47 (47)
__ C199, 220 (221)	__ C200, 150 (151)	__ C202, 120 (121)
__ C201, 220 (221)	__ C192, 1200 (122)	

ⓘ There are two types of ceramic trimmer capacitors used in the band-pass filters: 30 pF and 50 pF. These may look identical. They will either be bagged separately, or the 50-pF trimmers will have a red marking.

☐ Install the trimmers listed below, starting with C21 near the back-left corner. Orient the flat side of each trimmer capacitor with the flat side of its component outline. This orientation is required to prevent RF pickup during alignment.

__ C21, 50 pF	__ C23, 50 pF
__ C32, 30 pF	__ C34, 30 pF
__ C44, 30 pF	__ C46, 30 pF

☐ Set all of the trimmer capacitors just installed to their mid-way point (see Figure 6-23). Use a small flat-blade screwdriver.

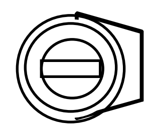


Figure 6-23

☐ Install L5, a 33 µH RF choke (ORG-ORG-BLK), near the back-left corner.

☐ Install the following transistors, which are located just above the I/O Controller (U1).

__ Q10, 2N7000	__ Q11, PN2222A
__ Q13, PN2222A	

☐ Ferrite-bead assemblies Z1 and Z2 will be installed vertically near transformer T3 as indicated by their component outlines. To make these assemblies, string two ferrite beads onto a 1" (25 mm) length of bare hookup wire (or discarded component leads) as shown in Figure 6-24.

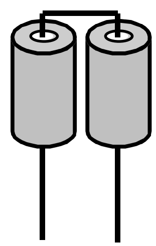


Figure 6-24

☐ Install Z1 and Z2, bending the leads on the bottom of the board to hold them in place. Make sure that the beads are seated flat against the PC board, then solder.

☐ Install trimmer potentiometer R60 (100 ohms), which is near Q13. Set the trimmer fully counter-clockwise.

☐ Locate D9, the 1N5711 diode which you identified and set aside earlier. Install D9 near the right edge of the board.

☐ Install electrolytic capacitors C126 (47 µF) and C137 (100 µF), both near R60. Insert the (+) lead of each capacitor into the hole with the (+) symbol.

☐ Install electrolytic capacitor C125 (22 µF) which is near U1.

☐ Install Q5 (2N5109). Be sure Q5 is firmly seated on the board and has its tab oriented as shown by the component outline before soldering.

☐ Install the following components on the bottom of the board, working from left to right.

__ R63, 220 (RED-RED-BRN)

Note: bend the leads of R58 exactly as shown by its component outline.

__ R58, 180 ohms, 1/2 watt (BRN-GRY-BRN)

__ RFC8, __ RFC9, __ RFC4, 10 µH (BRN-BLK-BLK)

__ RFC6, 0.68 µH (BLU-GRY-SILVER)
__ RFC5, 10 µH (BRN-BLK-BLK)

__ R50, 1.5 ohms, 1/2-watt (BRN-GRN-GLD)

__ R48, 120 (BRN-RED-BRN) __ R47, 47 (YEL-VIO-BLK)
__ R43, 22 (RED-RED-BLK)

__ R42, 4.7 ohms (YEL-VIO-GLD)
__ R44, 2.7 k (RED-VIO-RED)

☐ Make sure you have separated the remaining slug-tuned shielded inductors into 1 µH and 4.7 µH types. Install these inductors in the order indicated below, on the top of the board. These inductors are difficult to remove once soldered, so double-check the part numbers. The 4.7 µH inductors are labeled "T1005," and the 1 µH inductors are labeled "T1050."

__ L3, 4.7 µH ("T1005") __ L4, 4.7 µH
__ L8, 4.7 µH __ L9, 4.7 µH

__ L10, 1 µH ("T1050") __ L11, 1 µH
__ L12, 1 µH __ L13, 1 µH

TO-220 package transistors Q6, 7, and 8 look identical, but Q6 is different. Locate the two 2SC1969's (labeled "C1969"), Q7 and Q8, and set them to one side. The 2SC2166 transistor, Q6 ("C2166"), will be installed first.

☐ Attach a self-adhesive thermal pad to the PC board on top of the component outline for Q6. The hole in the thermal pad must be aligned precisely with Q6's mounting hole on the board.

☐ Prepare the leads of Q6 as you did with the voltage regulators on the Control board (Figure 4-4), using gradual bends to avoid lead breakage. Insert Q6 as shown by its component outline.

☐ Secure Q6 to the board using a 4-40 x 3/8" (9.5 mm) screw, #4 lock washer and 4-40 nut. The screw should be inserted from the bottom side of the RF board; the washer and nut go on the top.

☐ Verify that the body of Q6 is not touching the leads of any adjacent components, then solder.

☐ Wind and install each of the low-pass filter inductors listed below, starting at the back-right with L16 and L17 (80 meters). Wind each of the toroids using the core type and number of turns indicated (use red enamel wire). Review the toroid winding instructions and illustrations for RFC14 (Page 50).

__ L16	T44-2 (red), 21 turns	19" (48 cm)
__ L17	T44-2 (red), 21 turns	19" (48 cm)
__ L18	T44-2 (red), 9 turns	10" (25 cm)
__ L19	T44-2 (red), 8 turns	9" (23 cm)
__ L20	T44-2 (red), 7 turns	8" (18 cm)

Note: The black cores below are all of the powdered-iron (ceramic) type, not ferrite. If necessary you can identify them by measuring their diameter, which is 0.44" (11 mm), *not* 3/8" (9.5 mm).

__ L21	T44-10 (black), 9 turns	10" (25 cm)
__ L22	T44-10 (black), 8 turns	9" (23 cm)
__ L23	T44-10 (black), 11 turns	11" (28 cm)
__ L24	T44-10 (black), 10 turns	10" (25 cm)

It is very important to wind and install toroidal transformers T1 through T4 exactly as described in the following steps. Remember that transformer windings are identified by numbered pairs of leads, which correspond to the PC board and schematic.

☐ T1 is wound on an FT37-43 ferrite core (dark gray) and has windings similar to those shown in Figure 6-25. The <u>1–2</u> winding is 9 turns of red enamel wire (10", 25 cm). The <u>3–4</u> winding is 3 turns of green enamel wire (5", 13 cm). (The drawing shows more than 9 turns on the larger winding.)

☐ Prepare T1's leads as in Part II. Completely remove the insulation to within about 1/8" (3 mm) of the core, then tin the leads.

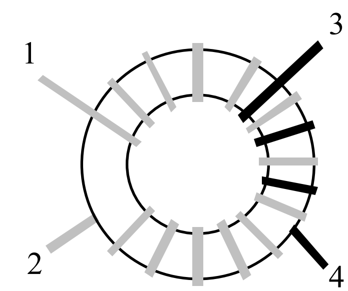


Figure 6-25

☐ Install T1 horizontally near Q5, inserting the leads into the matching numbered holes as indicated by the above illustration and by the component outline.

☐ T2 is wound on the same core type as T1. Its windings must be spaced as shown in Figure 6-26, with the 3-4 winding occupying about half the diameter of the core. T2's 1–2 winding is 12 turns of red enamel wire (13", 33 cm), and its 3–4 winding is 8 turns of green (9", 23 cm).

☐ Prepare T2's leads, but leave an extra 1/2" of insulation on leads 3 and 4 (green) as shown in Figure 6-26.

☐ Install T2 horizontally, just to the right of Q6.

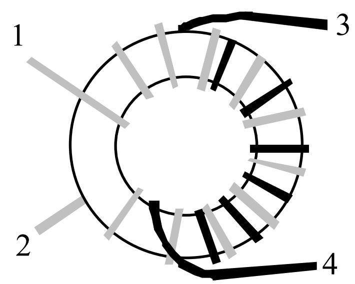


Figure 6-26

☐ Transformer T3 is mounted vertically, to the right of T2. The wires for the two windings must be twisted together before winding (bi-filar). First, cut two 10" (25 cm) lengths of enamel wire, one red, and one green. Then twist the wires together over their entire length. The wires should cross over each other about once every 1/2" or 1 cm.

☐ Wind the twisted wires onto a 1/2" (12.7 mm) dia. ferrite core (FT50-43), using exactly 5 turns and covering about 85% of the core. Figure 6-27 shows how the winding should look. The leads of T3 are labeled with letters A through D on the PC board to avoid confusing them with the numbered leads of T2 and T4.

☐ Separate T3's leads as shown in Figure 6-27. Strip and tin the leads, being careful not to let the red/green wire pairs short together.

☐ Install T3 vertically as shown by its component outline. T3 must be seated flat against the PC board, with its leads pulled tight on the bottom side.

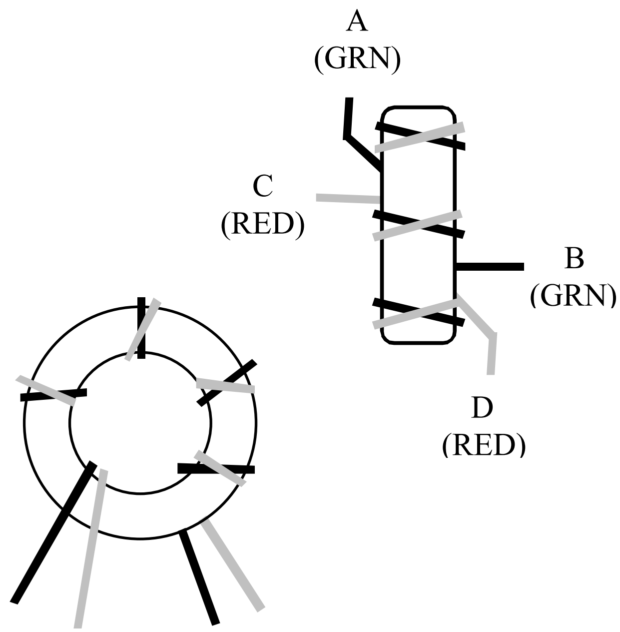


Figure 6-27

☐ Locate the "binocular" (2-hole) ferrite core for T4. Wind 2 turns of green insulated hookup wire (5", 13 cm) through the core as shown in Figure 6-28. This forms the 1–2 winding.

☐ Cut and strip the two leads using the lengths shown. Be careful not to nick the wire.

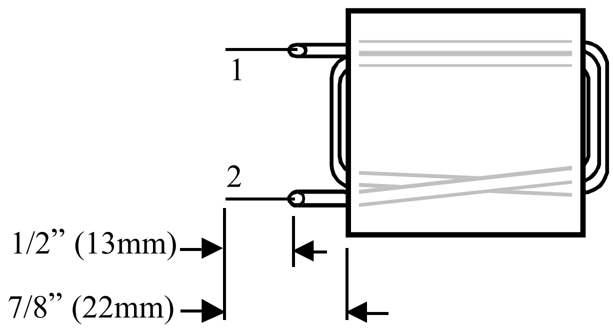


Figure 6-28

☐ Wind a 3-turn winding (3–4) on top of the 1-2 winding, but with the wire starting and ending on the opposite side (Figure 6-29). Use 7" (18 cm) of white insulated hookup wire.[10]

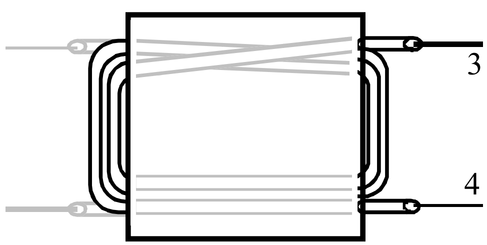


Figure 6-29

[10] If you plan to operate exclusively at about 5 watts or less, use only 2 turns for the 3-4 winding. This will improve transmitter efficiency at low power levels. (See Modifications for more information on this winding option.)

☐ Before installing T4, verify that the screws holding the 2-D fastener beneath it are tightened, and that #4 internal-tooth lock washers were used. It is important that these screws not come loose sometime after T4 has been installed.

☐ Install T4 to the right of T3, inserting leads for the 1–2 and 3–4 windings into their matching numbered holes. T4 should rest directly on top of the screws that secure the 2-D fastener beneath it. T4 should also be parallel to the board, not tilted to one side. Pull the leads taut on the bottom and bend them to hold the transformer in place. Do not solder T4 yet.

☐ Use two 2" (5 cm) lengths of bare hookup wire to form the 5–6 and 7–8 windings on T4 (Figure 6-30). (These are more accurately described as *links*, each being just a single turn.) Route the bare wires through the core first, then bend them down and insert them into their numbered holes and solder. Do not solder yet.

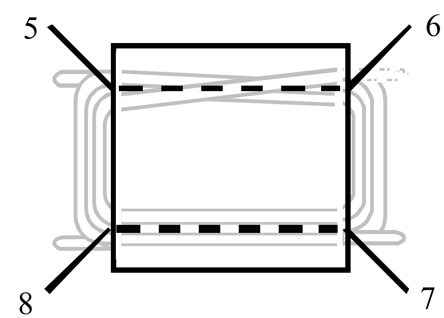


Figure 6-30

☐ Adjust all of the windings of T4 as needed so that the transformer is positioned directly above its component outline. Pull the leads tight on the bottom, then solder.

☐ Inspect all four transformers in the transmitter area closely, on both top and bottom, for shorts or cold solder joints.

PA transistors Q7 and Q8 (2SC1969) must be installed on the *bottom* of the PC board, with their metal tabs facing away from the board, as explained in the following steps. Locate the component outlines on the bottom of the board before proceeding.

☐ Prepare the leads of Q7 as shown in Figure 6-31. *Bend the leads upward, away from the tab*--the opposite of the way you bent the leads of Q6. Use smooth bends, not 90°. Do not install Q7 yet.

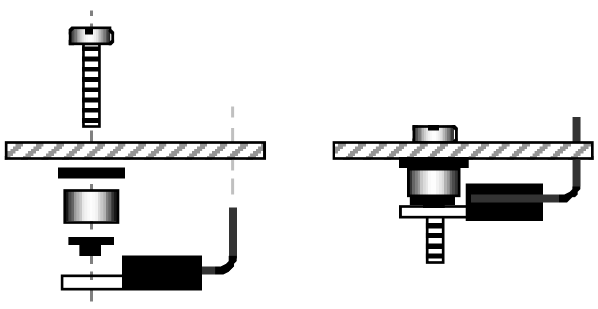


Figure 6-31

☐ Insert a 4-40 x 1/2" (12.7 mm) screw through the PC board hole for Q7's tab (see Figure 6-31). Then slip the hardware listed below onto this mounting screw from the bottom side. (The shoulder washer can be found with the **MISCELLANEOUS** components.)

__ #4 fibre washer (black)
__ 1/4" (6.4 mm) dia., 1/8" (3 mm) long phenolic standoff (brown)
__ #4 nylon shoulder washer (black)

Do not use any hardware other than that supplied. The height of the PA transistor assembly is critical for maintaining good heat dissipation.

☐ Place Q7 on the bottom of the board so that the leads are inserted into the PC board as indicated by Q7's component outline. The mounting screw and hardware should appear as shown in Figure 6-31. Do not solder yet.

☐ Make sure the smaller part of the shoulder washer is visible through the hole in Q7's metal tab.

☐ Secure Q7 and its hardware temporarily using a 4-40 nut and #4 lock washer. Tighten the nut only finger-tight.

☐ Once Q7 and its hardware appears to be parallel to the PC board as shown in Figure 6-31, solder Q7 on the top of the board.

☐ Repeat the steps above for the other PA transistor, Q8.

Uninstalled Components

☐ Check off the components in the list below, verifying that they are not yet installed.

Top side of the board:

__ C13 (160 m/RXANT)	__ C14 (160 m/RXANT)
__ J13 (Transverter I/O)	__ J14 (160 m/RXANT)
__ P6 (ATU or PA)	
__ C75 (160 m/RXANT)	__ C76 (VFO; not used)
__ J11 (SSB adapter)	__ J5 (low-level AF output)
__ J12 (Noise Blanker)	__ J9 (SSB adapter)
__ J10 (SSB adapter)	__ P3 (Battery or PA)

Bottom side of the board:

__ R4 (not used)

ℹ The unfilled locations are for parts provided with option kits. If you already have any of these options, you should install these components now, as explained in the following steps.

Do not remove the option bypass jumpers (W1, W2, etc.), even if you're planning to install the option components. *The K2 must be aligned and tested before the jumpers are removed and option modules installed.*

K160RX Component Installation (optional)

☐ Locate the **Installation** section of the K160RX kit manual.

☐ Cross out the first three steps (turning off the K2, removing hardware, etc.), which are not applicable since the K2 is already disassembled. Skip the next two steps. **Do not remove W1.**

☐ Complete the steps for J14 through C13 and C14.

☐ Cross out the next two steps (examination of Q7 and Q8). The remaining steps should be completed *after* you have aligned and tested the K2.

KSB2 Component Installation (optional)

☐ Locate **KSB2 Module Installation** in the KSB2 manual.

☐ Complete only the steps required to install J11, J9, and J10, and the standoff. **Do not remove W2, W3, or C167 at this time.** The remaining steps cannot be performed until after the K2 has been assembled and tested.

Miscellaneous Option Component Installation (optional)

☐ If you have the KAT2 (ATU) or KPA100 (Amplifier) option, install 2-pin connector P6. Use the option manual's instructions.

☐ If you have the KBT2 (Battery) or KPA100 option, install 2-pin connector P3. Use the option manual's instructions.

☐ If you have the KNB2 (Noise Blanker) option, locate the **Installation** section of the KNB2 manual. Complete only the installation of J12 and the standoff. **Do not remove W5, R88, R89 or R90 at this time.**

Visual Inspection

☐ Examine the bottom (solder side) of the RF board carefully for unsoldered pins, solder bridges, or cold solder joints. Since this is a large board, you should break the examination up into three parts:

__ perimeter area of the board
__ front half
__ back half

☐ Examine the top (component side) of the RF board for unsoldered pins, solder bridges, or cold solder joints. This step is necessary because some components are installed on the bottom of the board and soldered on top.

☐ Make sure switch S1 on the RF board is in the OFF position. (Plunger OUT is OFF.)

Resistance Checks

☐ Perform the following resistance checks.

Test Point	Signal Name	Res. (to GND)
Q7 collector	12V	> 500 ohms
Q6 base	Driver bias	100-140 ohms
Q7 base	PA bias	2.5 - 3.0 k
U11 pin 8	8A	> 250 ohms
U10 pin 8	8T	> 500 ohms
U12 pin 1	8R	> 500 ohms

☐ Install the two side panels and secure with two chassis screws each as you did in Part I and Part II.

☐ Plug in the front panel assembly and make sure the connectors are completely mated. Secure the front panel with four chassis screws.

☐ Verify that all components on the bottom of the RF board have an installed height of 1/4" (6 mm) or less. Capacitors that stand above this height must be bent downward so that they won't hit the bottom cover or heat sink.

☐ Install the bottom cover and secure it using six chassis screws.

☐ Plug in the control board. Make sure that all three connectors are completely mated.

☐ Secure the front panel and control boards together using two chassis screws.

☐ Locate the heat sink panel. Remove any masking tape, including the large piece that covers several holes.

☐ Attach two round rubber feet to the heat sink using 4-40 x 7/16" (11 mm) screws, #4 lock washers, and 4-40 nuts. The screws are standard steel/zinc-plated, not black anodized. The nuts go on the *inside* surface of the heatsink. (The rubber feet can be found with the **MISCELLANEOUS** items.)

☐ Remove the finishing nuts and washers from the shafts of the antenna and key jacks. They will be re-installed later.

☐ Turn the K2 up on its left side. This will keep the PA transistor screws from slipping out during the following steps.

☐ Remove the 4-40 nuts and #4 lock washers from the mounting screws for Q7 and Q8, but do not pull the screws out. (If you pull these screws out, the associated hardware will fall off and will have to be re-installed.)

ⓘ In the next step you'll install thermal insulation pads on the power amplifier transistors, Q7 and Q8. These pads must be positioned correctly to keep the collectors of the transistors from shorting to ground. Proper positioning is also required to guarantee good heat conduction.

☐ Place self-adhesive thermal pads on top of Q7 and Q8 as shown in Figure 6-32, with the hole in the pad centered over the hole in the transistor tab. *The adhesive side must be in contact with the transistor.*

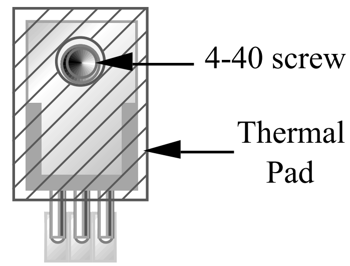


Figure 6-32

☐ Back out the mounting screws for Q7 and Q8 until the ends of the screws protrude only slightly from the transistor tabs. Keep the K2 on its left side so the screws don't slip out further.

☐ Make sure that the thermal pads on Q7 and Q8 are centered, and that you can see the shoulder washers inside the tab holes. If the shoulder washers have come out of the tab holes, re-align the PA transistor hardware as needed.

☐ Keeping the K2 on its left side, slip the heat sink over the rear-panel connectors and into position (Figure 6-33). Figure 6-34 shows how the heat sink and associated hardware appear in cross-section.

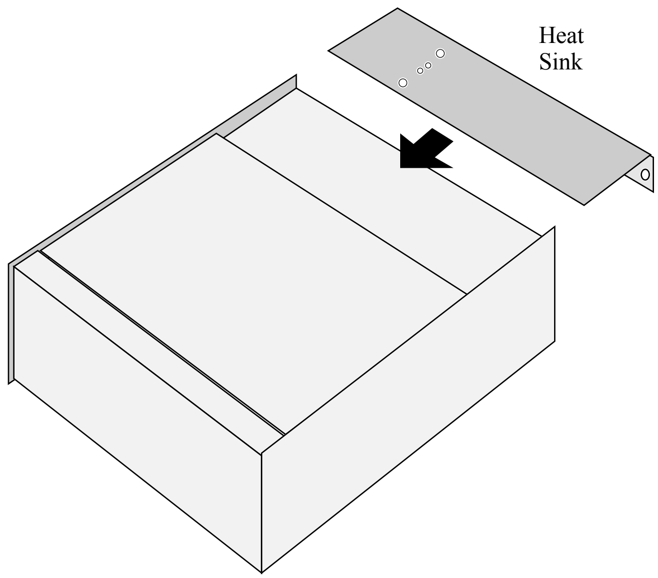


Figure 6-33

☐ Make sure that the four small holes in the heat sink line up with Q7/Q8 and the 2-D block between them.

☐ Press the Q7/Q8 mounting screws all the way back in so that they protrude from the heat sink.

☐ Use two chassis screws and two #4 lock washers to secure the heat sink firmly to the 2-D fastener.

☐ Secure Q7 and Q8 on the bottom of the heat sink using 4-40 nuts and #4 lock washers. *Do not over-tighten the nuts, as this may cause the thermal pads to scrape against the heat sink, possibly causing a short to ground.*

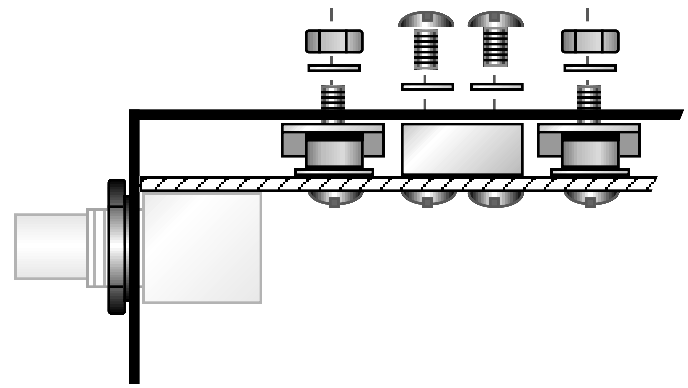


Figure 6-34

☐ Using an ohmmeter on a low resistance scale, check for a short from Q7 or Q8 collector to ground. (This test should also be performed any time the heat sink is removed and re-installed.) If a short is measured, remove the heat sink and investigate the cause. The most likely reason for a short is mis-alignment of a shoulder washer or thermal pad. *If a thermal pad or shoulder washer is damaged, it must be replaced.*

☐ There are four more #4 holes in the heat sink: two on the bottom and two on the back panel. Use four chassis screws to secure the heat sink to the side panels and RF board at these locations. You may need to adjust the positions of the 2-D fasteners on the side panels slightly.

☐ Install the washers and finishing nuts that you removed earlier from the antenna and key jacks. (The antenna jack hardware is shown installed in Figure 6-34.)

Alignment and Test, Part III

In this section you'll complete alignment and test of the K2 on all bands.

☐ Make sure the power switch, S1, is in the OFF position (out).

☐ Connect your power supply or battery. For transmitter tests, a battery or well-regulated power supply that can handle at least 2 amps is recommended. Avoid using a switching power supply unless it is well shielded and includes EMI filtering. A linear-mode supply will typically generate much less noise in the HF bands. (See any recent *ARRL Handbook* for examples of both types.)

☐ Connect a 50-ohm dummy load to the antenna jack. The dummy load should be rated at 10 watts or higher.

☐ Connect a pair of headphones and a key or keyer paddle.

☐ Set the POWER control fully counter-clockwise (minimum power output).

☐ Turn on the K2. You should see **ELECRAFT** on the LCD, followed by the frequency display.

☐ Select voltage/current display mode by tapping **DISPLAY** to make sure the receiver is not drawing excess current. (Typical current drain will be 150-250 mA depending on menu settings.)

☐ Return to frequency display mode.

☐ Switch to CW and select FL1 using **XFIL**.

☐ Use the menu to set up the desired CW sidetone volume and pitch if you have not already done so. Also set up the desired keying device using **INP**. If you're using a hand key or external keyer, use **INP HAND**. To use the internal keyer, select **PDLn** or **PDLr** (normal or reverse paddle). You can also connect a computer or external keyer along with the keyer paddle. Refer to the Operation section for details on this "auto-detect" feature (Page 92).

☐ To verify that the sidetone is functioning, hold the **SPOT** button. Tap any button to turn the SPOT tone off.

40-Meter Transmitter Alignment

ⓘ To align the transmitter you'll need some means for monitoring power output as you adjust the band-pass filters. An analog wattmeter or oscilloscope is ideal. However, in the instructions that follow we'll assume that you're using the K2's built-in digital wattmeter, which will also provide satisfactory results.

☐ Set the POWER control for 2.0 watts.

☐ Switch to the 40 meter band and set the VFO for about 7100 kHz.

☐ Locate the 40-meter band-pass filter inductors, L1 and L2, and be prepared to adjust them using the wide end of the tuning tool.

ⓘ In the following steps you'll place the K2 into "TUNE" mode by holding **TUNE**. You should limit key-down periods to about 5 or 10 seconds during tune-up for safety reasons. If you see or smell smoke turn the K2 off and refer to Troubleshooting.

Note: While in tune mode, it is normal to see power drift upward several tenths of a watt. You may also see a sudden jump in power during alignment. The output will quickly be reduced to about 2.0 W by the firmware if this happens.

☐ Put the K2 into tune mode and activate the built-in wattmeter by holding **TUNE**. Using the alignment tool, adjust L1 for maximum output. Tap any button to exit TUNE mode.

☐ Enter tune mode again and adjust L2 for maximum output. Tap any button to exit.

☐ If necessary, repeat the adjustment of L1 and L2 two or three times to be sure that you have the inductors peaked correctly. If you cannot get power output to 2.0 watts or higher, see Troubleshooting.

☐ Make sure the bar graph is set for **DOT** mode using the **GRPH** menu entry.

☐ Set power output to 5.0 W using the POWER control.

☐ Tap **DISPLAY** to enter voltage/current display mode. When this display is selected, you can use **TUNE** to check your voltage and current in transmit mode.

☐ Enter tune mode and note the change in voltage and current. Current drain at 5 watts is typically 1.3 to 1.6 amps.[11] If the current reading is much higher than this, or if the voltage drops more than 1 V, you may have a problem in the transmitter, load, or power supply (see Troubleshooting).

☐ Return to frequency display using the **DISPLAY** switch.

☐ Set the POWER control for 10.0 watts.

☐ Enter tune mode just long enough to verify that the wattmeter reads approximately 10 watts. If you then switch to voltage/current display and hold **TUNE** again, you should see a current drain of typically 1.8 to 2 amps. If you see a "HI CUR" warning message (high current), use CAL CUR to set your transmit current limit higher. If current is much higher than 2 A, see Troubleshooting.

This completes transmitter alignment and test on 40 meters.

[11] The K2 transmitter is most efficient at 10 watts. If you plan to operate exclusively at 5 watts or less, see Modifications for ways to improve low-power efficiency. Current drain may seem to be higher than what you're used to at QRP levels, but the K2 is an SSB-capable transceiver. SSB transmission requires more transmitter "overhead" to prevent distortion.

VFO Linearization

In Part II you completed the VFO linearization procedure on 40 meters. In the following steps you'll do the VFO linearization on the remaining bands.

☐ Make sure the bottom cover is securely attached.

☐ Allow the K2 to stabilize for at least 5 minutes at room temperature (approx. 20-25°C).

☐ Connect the frequency counter cable to the VCO test point, TP1.

☐ Switch to 80 meters. Set the VFO for 3500.10 kHz.

☐ Select CW Normal mode and filter FL1.

☐ Enter the menu and select **CAL PLL**, then start the VFO linearization sequence by holding **EDIT** a second time. The frequency counter will show the VCO frequency as it decreases through a 5 kHz range. Tap **MENU** once **End** is displayed.

☐ Linearize the VFO on the remaining bands using the starting frequencies listed below. Use **CAL PLL** as you did above. Check off each band as it is completed.

__ 10000.10	__ 14000.10	__ 18000.10
__ 21000.10	__ 24800.10	__ 28000.10

Receiver Pre-Alignment (Optional)

Since the same filters are used on both receive and transmit, it is possible to align all the remaining bands on transmit only. However, you can pre-align the filters on receive by using either a signal generator, separate ham transceiver, or antennas for each band. This pre-alignment on receive will make transmitter alignment easier, since the filter adjustments will already be at or close to their final values.

☐ Switch to 80 meters and set the VFO for about 3750 kHz (mid-band). Turn on the RF preamp by tapping **PRE/ATTN** until you see the PRE annunciator turn on.

☐ Use a signal generator or an antenna to inject a signal or noise at this frequency.

☐ Adjust L3 and L4 for maximum signal strength.

ⓘ Since some inductors are shared between two bands, you must always align the remaining bands in the order indicated. Always use this procedure if you re-align the filters later.

☐ Switch to 20 meters (14100 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Set C21 and C23 to their mid-points. Adjust L8 and L9 for maximum signal strength. (This step pre-sets C21, C23, L8, and L9 before final adjustment in the next two steps.)

☐ Switch to 30 meters (10100 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Adjust L8 and L9 for maximum signal strength.

☐ Switch back to 20 meters (14100 kHz). Adjust C21 and C23 for maximum signal strength.

☐ Switch to 15 meters (21100 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Adjust L10 and L11 for maximum signal strength.

☐ Switch to 17 meters (18100 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Adjust C32 and C34 for maximum signal strength.

☐ Switch to 10 meters (28200 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Adjust L12 and L13 for maximum signal strength.

☐ Switch to 12 meters (24900 kHz) and turn on the preamp. Adjust C44 and C46 for maximum signal strength.

This completes receiver alignment.

Transmitter Alignment

If you did the receiver alignment, above, you may find that little or no transmit adjustment is required on most bands.

☐ Set the POWER control for 2.0 watts.

☐ Switch to 80 meters and set the VFO for about 3750 kHz (mid-band).

☐ Enter tune mode and adjust L3 and L4 for maximum power as indicated on the internal wattmeter. (Use a more sensitive analog instrument if available.) Limit tune-up time to 5 or 10 seconds.

ⓘ Since some inductors are shared between two bands, you must always align the remaining bands in the order indicated. Always use this procedure if you re-align the filters later.

☐ Switch to 20 meters (14100 kHz). Set C21 and C23 to their mid-points. Adjust L8 and L9 for maximum power output. (This step pre-sets C21, C23, L8, and L9 before final adjustment in the next two steps.)

☐ Switch to 30 meters (10100 kHz) and adjust L8 and L9 for maximum power output.

☐ Switch to 20 meters (14100 kHz) and adjust C21 and C23 for maximum power output.

☐ Switch to 15 meters (21100 kHz) and adjust L10 and L11 for maximum power output.

☐ Switch to 17 meters (18100 kHz) and adjust C32 and C34 for maximum power output.

☐ Switch to 10 meters (28200 kHz) and adjust L12 and L13 for maximum power output.

☐ Switch to 12 meters (24900 kHz) and adjust C44 and C46 for maximum power output.

This completes transmitter alignment.

7. Final Assembly

☐ Place the top cover upside down as shown in Figure 7-1, with the rear panel facing away from you. The illustration shows how the speaker, 2-conductor cable, external speaker jack and other hardware will be attached to the top cover.

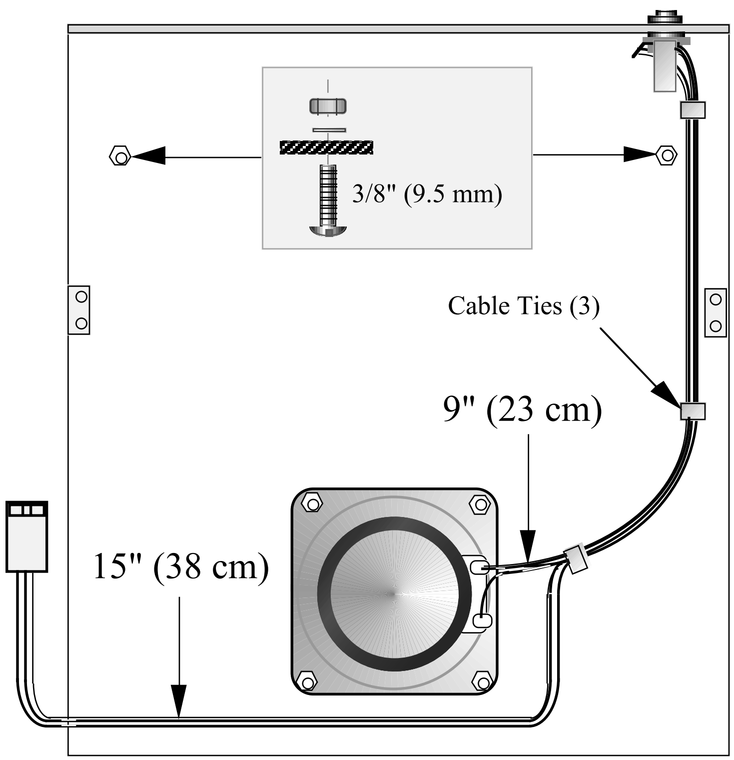


Figure 7-1

☐ Place the speaker on the top cover in the position shown in Figure 7-1. Secure it with four 3/8" (9.5 mm) screws, #4 fibre washers (black), #4 lock washers, and 4-40 nuts (Figure 7-2). Do not over-tighten the nuts, as this can distort the speaker frame.

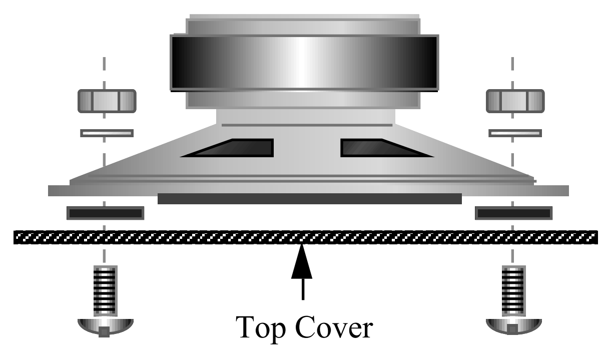


Figure 7-2

☐ As shown in Figure 7-1, there are two spare holes provided near the back edge of the top cover. Use two 4-40 x 3/8" (9.5 mm) screws to fill these holes, securing them with #4 lock washers and 4-40 nuts. The nuts go on the inside of the top cover. (This hardware is provided to secure the optional internal battery.)

☐ Install two 2-D fasteners at the locations indicated in Figure 7-1 (left and right edges). The 2-D fasteners will line up exactly with the edges of the top cover when installed properly. Use two chassis screws per 2-D fastener.

☐ Install the external speaker jack in the hole labeled "EXT SPKR" on the rear panel. Orient the jack as shown in Figure 7-1 and Figure 7-4, with the *"AF"* tab nearest the inside of the top cover. (**Caution:** Mis-identification of the three tabs could result in an AF output to ground short.)

☐ A 24" (61 cm) length of two-conductor speaker cable is supplied. Cut this cable into two pieces, one 15" (38 cm) long and the other 9" (23 cm) long.

☐ Solder crimp pins to the two wires at one end of the 15" (38 cm) length of speaker cable (Figure 7-3).

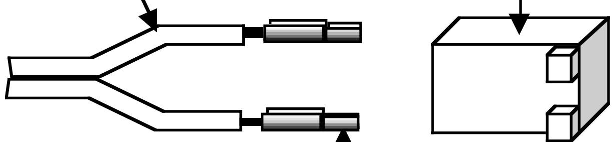


Figure 7-3

ⓘ When you insert the crimp pins into the housing in the next step, they should snap into place. Each pin has a small tab on the back that latches into a hole in the housing when inserted.

☐ Insert the copper wire into the pin 1 position of a two-pin housing as shown. Insert the other wire into the pin 2 position.

☐ Connect the other end of this cable to the external speaker jack as shown in Figure 7-4. The copper wire must be connected to the "AF" lug of the speaker jack. Solder only the copper wire.

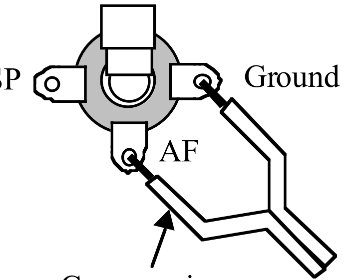


Figure 7-4

☐ Connect one end of the 9" (23 cm) speaker cable to the speaker terminals. The copper wire should be connected to the lug marked (+) on the speaker. Solder both wires.

☐ Connect the other end of this cable to the external speaker jack as shown in Figure 7-5. The copper wire must be connected to the lug marked "SP" below. Solder all three lugs.

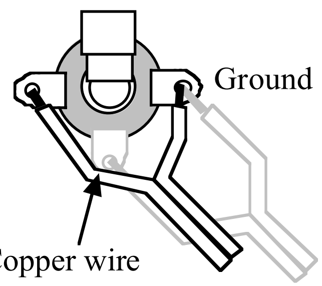


Figure 7-5

☐ Use three cable ties at the points shown in Figure 7-1 to hold the speaker cables in place. The ties should be pulled tight. Trim any excess cable tie length.

Finishing Touches

☐ Examine the control board one last time to be sure that it is correctly plugged into the RF board. All three connectors must be mated completely.

☐ Leave the frequency counter test cable to the BFO test point (TP2). This will allow you to modify your filter and BFO settings if necessary during normal operation.

☐ If there are any missing chassis screws in the bottom cover, heat sink, side panels, or front panel, install them now.

☐ Plug the internal speaker cable into P5 on the RF board, just behind the on-off switch, S1. The connector is keyed and can only be plugged in one way.

ⓘ Even if you have purchased some K2 options, you should not assemble and install them yet. The option manuals assume that you are familiar with basic K2 operation.

☐ Place the top cover onto the chassis and secure it using six chassis screws as shown in Figure 7-6.

ⓘ When removing the top cover in the future, take out only the six screws shown in Figure 7-6.

☐ Attach the self-adhesive serial number label to the rear panel of the heat sink in the space provided.

☐ Write the serial number on the inside cover of your manual.

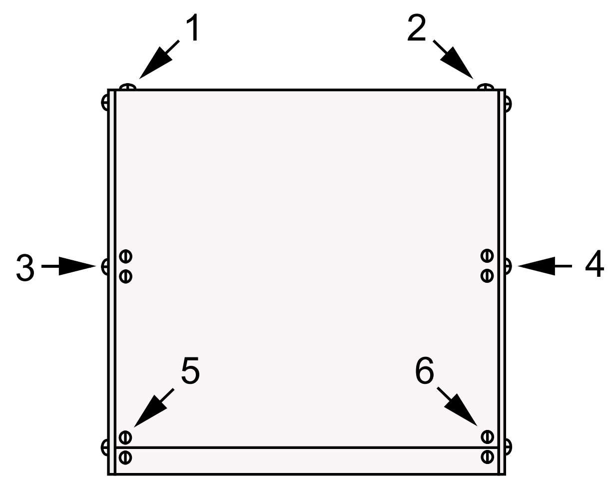
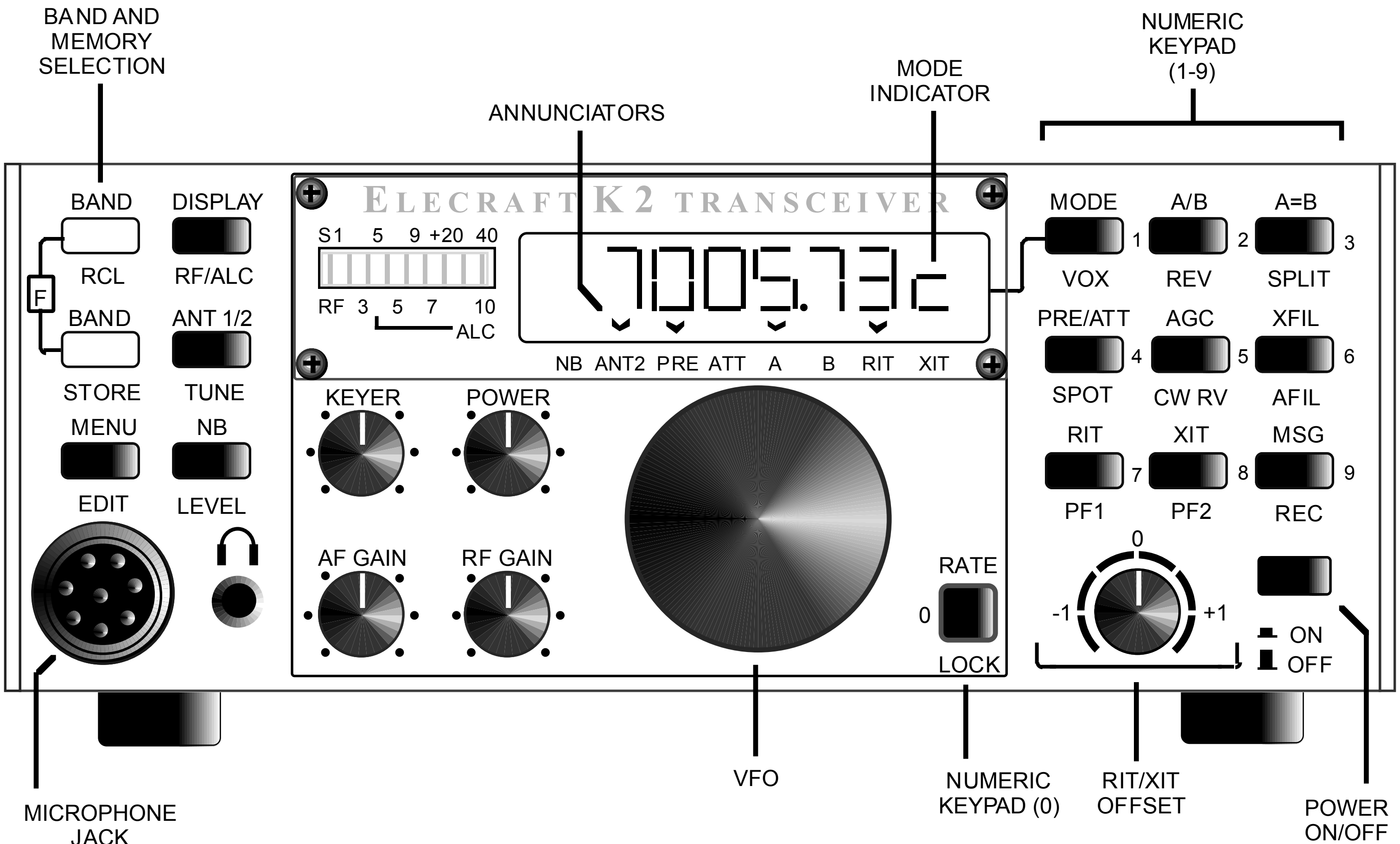


Figure 7-6

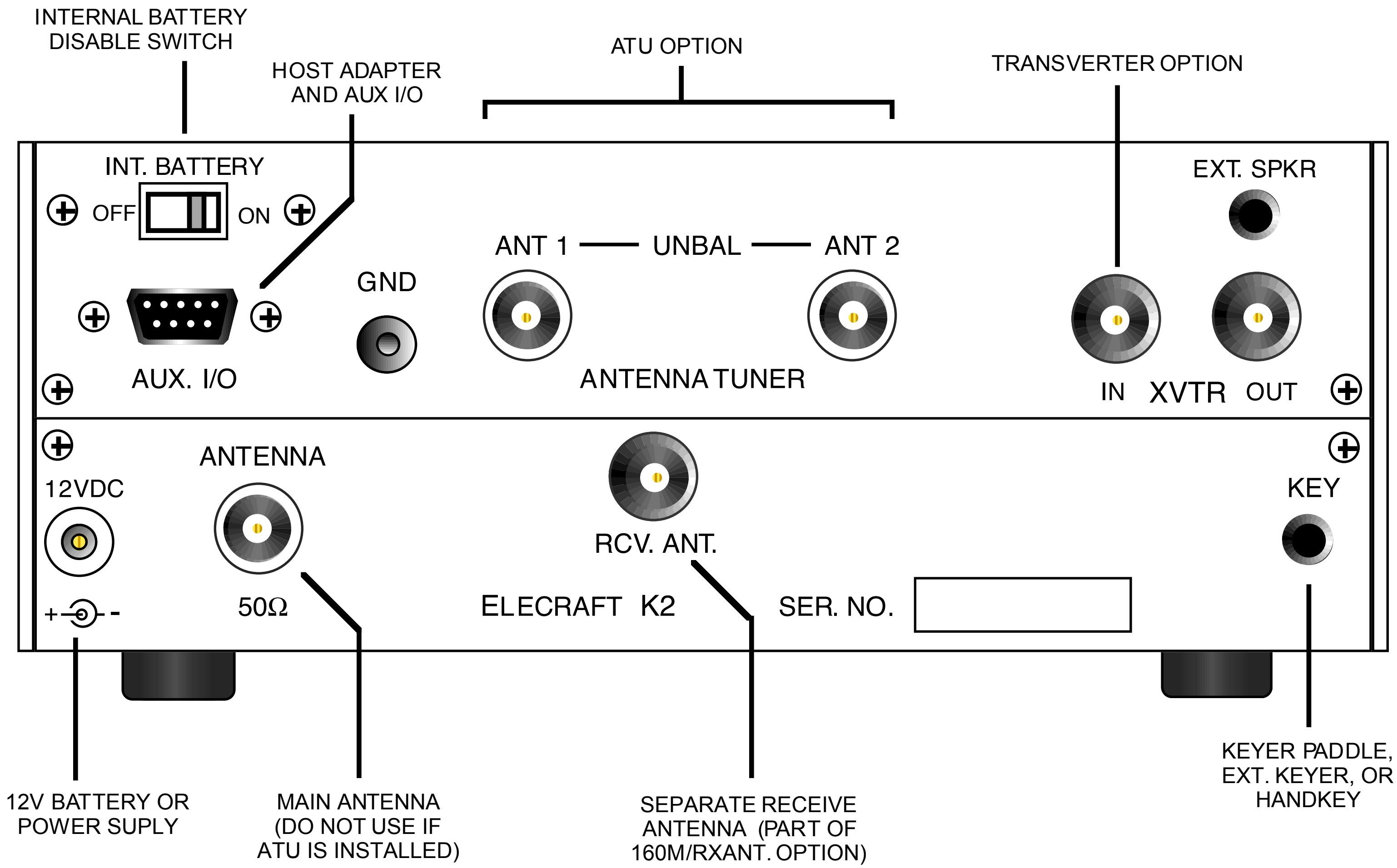
This completes assembly of your K2. Please read the Operation section, which follows, and try each of the K2's features.

ⓘ If you did not have access to a frequency counter or calibrated receiver when aligning the 4-MHz oscillator, you may wish to use the one of the alternative VFO calibration techniques described in the Operation section (page 98). You can use an on-air signal, such as WWV at 10 MHz, to obtain better than +/- 50 Hz VFO dial calibration on all bands.

8. Operation



K2 FRONT PANEL



K2 REAR PANEL

This section of the manual explains how to set up and operate the K2. Refer to the K2 FRONT PANEL and REAR PANEL illustrations on the previous pages for control locations.

Connections

Power Supply

You can power the basic K2 (without the KPA100 amplifier) from any 9-15 V DC power supply. A mating connector for the DC input jack is provided with the kit. Current drain is typically 1.5-2 A on transmit, but can be over 3 A at the highest power settings or with high SWR. (See Current Limiting, below.)

Internal Battery: An optional 12 V, 2.9-Ah rechargeable battery can be installed inside the K2 (model KBT2). A 14.0 V power supply can then be used to recharge the battery *and* power the transceiver. If an external battery is connected, the internal battery must be disabled using the INT BATTERY switch (rear panel). This will prevent internal battery damage due to undercharging.

Low Battery Warning: If the battery (or power supply) voltage drops below about 11 V, you'll see a brief **LO BATT** message flashed on the LCD once every 8 minutes (approx.). If this happens, you should reduce power and recharge your battery as soon as possible. For tips on extending battery life, see Advanced Operating Features.

Self-Resetting Fuse: If the K2's internal 12 V line is shorted to ground, fuse F1 will temporarily open, limiting current drain to about 100 mA. The display will remain blank. If this happens, turn power off until the problem is located and corrected.

Current Limiting: You can specify the maximum transmit current (see Calibration Functions), which will protect the power supply as well as the K2. You'll see **HI CUR** on the LCD if the programmed limit is reached.

Antenna

A well-matched antenna (50 Ω) or an antenna tuner should be used with the K2. Some high SWR conditions may result in excessive current drain unless power is reduced.

If you have the KAT2 antenna tuner option installed, the K2's power control and power output display will be much more accurate under all SWR conditions.

Keying Devices

Any type of hand key, bug, or external keyer can be plugged into the KEY jack, or you can use the K2's built-in memory keyer. In all cases, you must use a stereo plug with the keying device (a suitable plug is provided with the kit). Also see CW Operation.

Microphone

A standard 8-pin microphone jack is provided on the front panel. A jumper block on the front panel PCB is used to configure the mic jack for specific microphones. Refer to the SSB adapter manual.

Headphones

Any type of mono or stereo headphones at nearly any impedance will work with the K2. However, for best results we recommend high-quality stereo headphones with full ear covers and 1/8" (3 mm) plug.

External Speaker

The K2 has a built-in, high-sensitivity 4-ohm speaker. You can also plug in an external 4 or 8-ohm speaker at the "EXT. SPKR" jack.

Option Connectors

A number of mounting holes are provided on the back panel of the K2 for specific option connectors. See Internal Options.

Controls and Display

LCD and Bargraph Meter

The LCD shows the operating frequency and other information depending on selected display mode. The LED bargraph functions as an S-meter on receive, and RF out or ALC meter on transmit.

Power-Up Messages: The LCD will display **ELECRAFT** for two seconds on power-up. If a problem is detected, the display will show **INFO 100** or a similar message. The number shown corresponds to a paragraph in the Troubleshooting section.

Mode Indicator: A letter at the right end of the display tells you what operating mode the K2 is presently in: *C* (CW), *L* (LSB), or *U* (USB). If a small bar appears above the letter *C*, it means that the CW sideband is inverted (*CW reverse*). The mode indicator will also flash slowly in two cases: CW **TEST** mode (see CW Operation) and **SPEECH** (VOX) mode (see SSB Operation).

Annunciators: The LCD provides eight Chevron-shaped *annunciators*, or status indicators:

NB	noise blanker on (flashes if Low Threshold setting is selected using LEVEL)
ANT2	ant. 2 selected (requires ATU)
PRE	pre-amp on (approx. +14 dB)
ATTN	attenuator in (-10 dB)
A	VFO A selected (flashes in SPLIT mode)
B	VFO B selected (flashes in SPLIT mode)
RIT	RIT turned on (flashes if wide range selected)
XIT	XIT turned on (flashes if wide range selected)

Decimal Points: The decimal point to the right of the 1 kHz digit will flash slowly if the VFO is locked by holding LOCK. See Advanced Operating Features for other cases where decimal points flash (scanning, page 96; AGC OFF, page 98).

Potentiometers

AF GAIN receiver audio level

RF GAIN receiver RF level[12]

Turning this control CCW (counter-clockwise) decreases receiver RF sensitivity. At the same time it *increases* the bargraph S-meter indication to remind you that you're not at full receive sensitivity. The farther CCW the control is set, the stronger a signal must be before it results in a meter deflection.

KEYER keyer speed control

When you turn this control, keyer speed in words per minute (WPM) will be displayed, e.g. **SPD 18**. The speed can be set from about 9 to 50 WPM.

POWER power output control

When you turn this control, power output will be displayed in watts, e.g. **P 5.0**. The range is 0.1 to 15 W for the basic K2, and 1 to 100 W if you have the KPA100 amplifier installed. See Basic K2 Operation for details on controlling power output (page 90).

OFFSET RIT/XIT offset

This control provides a default range of +/- 0.6 kHz in 10 Hz steps when RIT and/or XIT is enabled. You can also select a wider RIT/XIT range (+/- 1.2 kHz). To do this, you'll first need to set up programmable function PF1 (or PF2) as an RIT/XIT range control (see Programmable Function Keys in the Advanced Operating Features section, page 98). Holding PF1 (or PF2) will then toggle between normal and wide RIT/XIT range; you'll see **RIT1** or **RIT2** flash on the LCD.

---

[12] As in many transceivers, this control actually varies the I.F. gain.

Switch Functions

Each pushbutton switch as two primary functions, indicated by the upper and lower labels. TAP a switch to access its upper function; HOLD a switch for over 1/2 second to access its lower function.

Numeric Keypad: In addition to their tap/hold functions, ten of the switches are labeled with digits 0 through 9. A digit can be entered using either a TAP or HOLD (e.g. 5, or 5). In some cases the difference between the two is significant, as indicated below.

Tap and Hold Functions

BAND+	select next higher band
RCL	recall memory #0-9 (to start scan, use #0-9)
BAND-	select next lower band
STORE	store memory #0-9 (to start scan, use #0-9)
MENU	enter the menu
EDIT	edit current menu parameter
DISPLAY	select display mode (normal or voltage/current)
RF/ALC	select SSB transmit bargraph mode (RF or ALC)
ANT1/2	toggle between antennas 1 and 2 (requires ATU)
TUNE	key transmitter; activates ATU if installed
NB	select noise blanker mode (OFF/NB1/NB2)
LEVEL	toggle noise blanker threshold (low or high)
RATE	select VFO tuning rate, 10/50/1000 Hz/step
LOCK	lock/unlock receive VFO (DP flashes)
MODE	select operating mode (CW/LSB/USB)
VOX	CW: OPER/TEST; SSB: PTT/SPEECH
PRE/ATT	turn on preamp or attenuator
SPOT	CW audio spot signal on/off
RIT	turn on RIT (annunciator flashes in high range)
PF1	activate programmable function 1
A/B	select A or B VFO
REV	temporary A/B VFO swap (used in SPLIT)
AGC	select FAST/SLOW AGC
CW RV	toggle between CW normal and CW reverse
XIT	turn on XIT (annunciator flashes in high range)
PF2	activate programmable function 2
A=B	set both VFO's to current VFO frequency
SPLIT	toggle between SPLIT and NORMAL transceive
XFIL	select next crystal filter (FL1-4)
AFIL	audio filter control (requires audio filter option)
MSG	play or chain CW msg #0-8 (to repeat, use #0-8)
REC	record CW message #0-8 (MSG cancels record)

Two-Switch Combinations

Press and *hold* the two indicated switches simultaneously:

BAND+ + BAND-	direct frequency entry (e.g., #7 0 4 0)
PRE/ATT + AGC	AGC on/off (mode letter dec. pt. flashes)
XFIL + AGC	display present filter # and bandwidth

Using the Menu

To access the menu, tap the **MENU** switch. The display will show the *menu entry* last used, with its name underlined. For example, you might see: **LCD DAY**, indicating that the LCD is in "day" mode (i.e., backlight off). You can select menu entries by turning the VFO knob or by tapping the **BAND+** and **BAND-** switches. This process is referred to as *scrolling*.

Hold the **EDIT** switch to modify the *parameter*. This will cause the parameter to be underlined, rather than the menu entry name. In the case of **LCD**, the parameter can be **DAY** or **NITE**. Parameters can be changed with the knob or **BAND+** / **BAND-**. When you're finished, tap **MENU** to return to scrolling. Another tap of **MENU** will return you to normal operation.

Edit Shortcut: If you know that the menu entry you want is the last one you accessed, you can use the *edit shortcut*: just jump right into edit mode by holding **EDIT**. You can change the parameter as usual, then exit by holding **EDIT** once more.

Menu Functions

All menu functions are listed below. Menu parameter settings are stored in EEPROM so they will not be lost when you turn off the K2. If a parameter appears as "**--**" in the menu, the associated option is not installed.

ST L	sidetone level (volume): 0-255
ST P	sidetone pitch: 0.40 to 0.80 kHz in 10 Hz steps
T-R	transmit-receive (QSK) delay: 0.00 to 2.55 sec. (0.05 sec. recommended for casual operation)
INP	CW input selection: **PDLn** (internal keyer/norm. w/auto-detect[13]) **PDLr** (internal keyer/reversed w/auto-detect) **HAND** (hand key or external keying device)
RPT	CW message repeat interval: 0 to 255 seconds
IAB	iambic mode: **A** or **B**
SSBA	SSB audio level (mic gain): **1**, **2**, **3**, or **BAL**
SSBC	SSB speech compression level: **1-1** through **4-1**
LCD	**DAY** (backlight off, bargraph bright) or **NITE** (backlight on, bargraph normal)
GRPH	LED bargraph selection: **OFF**, **DOT**, **BAR** (**OPT BATT** overrides **GRPH BAR**, forcing **DOT** mode)
OPT	receiver optimization: **PERF**ormance or **BATT**ery (see Advanced Operating Features)
ATU or **PA**	ATU or PA operating mode
RANT	receive antenna switch: **OFF** or **ON** (per-band) (see Advanced Operating Features)
CAL	calibration submenu (see Calibration Functions)
PF1 / **PF2**	programmable functions; can be assigned any menu function, **SCAN** resume or **RIT** range (see Advanced Operating Features)

[13] A computer or external keyer can be connected along with the paddle. See CW Operation (page 92).

Calibration Functions

The **CAL** menu provides functions that are used primarily for alignment and test. These include:

FCTR	frequency counter
CUR	programmable transmit current limit
S LO	S-meter zero set
S HI	S-meter full-scale sensitivity set
FIL	filter settings (see next page)
PLL	VFO linearization

After selecting a **CAL** function, hold **EDIT** to activate it.

Frequency Counter (CAL FCTR)

Before using the counter (**CAL FCTR**), you must connect the internal frequency counter input to the signal to be counted. A short test cable is provided for connecting the counter input to any of several internal K2 signals during alignment.

Transmit Current Limit (CAL CUR)

CAL CUR allows you to set the maximum transmit current drain in 0.02-A steps from 0.00-5.10 A. The recommended setting for normal 10W operation is 3 A, and 2 A or lower for < 5-W or battery-only operation.

S-meter Calibration (CAL S LO, CAL S HI)

To set the S-meter zero level:

1. disconnect the antenna
2. make sure the RF GAIN control is fully clockwise (max gain)
3. select **CAL S LO** in the menu
4. turn the VFO knob until the left-most bargraph segment is just barely turned off
5. exit **CAL** mode by tapping **MENU**

To set the S-meter sensitivity:

1. disconnect the antenna
2. turn the RF GAIN control fully counter-clockwise (minimum gain)
3. select **CAL S HI** in the menu
4. turn the VFO knob until the right-most bargraph segment is just barely turned off
5. exit **CAL** mode by tapping **MENU**

VFO Linearization (CAL PLL)

The **CAL PLL** function automatically calibrates VFO fine-tuning,[14] and must be done once on each band. You can repeat CAL PLL, although this should not normally be necessary. One reason you might re-run CAL PLL is after calibrating the frequency counter (see Advanced Operating Features, page 98). In general, you'll need to re-run CAL PLL anytime you change the setting of C22 (Control board).

To Linearize the VFO:

1. Remove the top cover. The *bottom* cover must be installed
2. Allow a 5-minute warm-up period at room temperature.
3. Connect the internal frequency counter cable to TP1 (VCO).
4. Exit the menu if you were using it.
5. Switch to the band you wish to calibrate. Set the VFO to the designated calibration frequency: 1800.1, 3500.1, 7000.1, 10000.1, 14000.1, 18000.1, 21000.1, 24800.1, or 28000.1 kHz.
6. Use the menu to activate **CAL PLL**.
7. When calibration is completed (1 to 2 minutes), you'll hear a short alert tone and see **End** on the LCD. You can then tap any button to return to normal operation.
8. Repeat steps 5-8 for each remaining band.

[14] What you're actually calibrating is the relationship between the PLL (phase-locked loop) divider and the crystal reference oscillator. (See Circuit Details.)

Filter Settings (CAL FIL)

This section explains how to use **CAL FIL** to select the bandwidth and BFO settings. An example appears on the next page. The Elecraft web site provides information on other filter setup methods, including a method that uses a personal computer sound card. For a discussion of how the crystal filter and BFO settings are related, see page 102.

Basic CAL FIL Setup

1. Connect the frequency counter test cable to TP2 (BFO).
2. Set AF GAIN high enough to hear some background noise.
3. *Switch to a band between 160 m and 17 m*. (The sideband is inverted on 15 m and above, which is confusing during filter setup.)
4. Select CW mode using **MODE**. If a bar appears above the *C*, the K2 is in CW Reverse mode; hold **CW RV** to select CW Normal.
5. Tap **XFIL** until **FL1** is selected.
6. Tap **MENU** and scroll to **CAL**. Hold **EDIT** to move the underline to **OFF**, then scroll until you see **CAL FIL**. Finally, hold **EDIT** again to activate the filter display.

Filter Bandwidth Display

The initial **CAL FIL** display shows the present filter bandwidth and the operating mode, e.g. **FL1 1.50c**. The number **1.50** indicates a bandwidth of *roughly* 1.50 kHz.[15] This parameter has a range of **0.00** - **2.49**. Above **2.49**, the parameter changes to **OP1** - **OP5**, which can be used to select optional filters. For example, the filter on the SSB adapter is **OP1**.

Note the present bandwidth, then try using the VFO knob to change it. You'll hear the "shape" (or pitch) of the noise change. (Return the bandwidth to the original setting after experimenting.)

[15] The number shown should be used only as a relative indication of filter bandwidth. Actual bandwidth will probably be narrower.

BFO Displays

Tap **BAND-** to display the BFO setting for filter FL1, which will be similar to **BF1t110c**. The 3-digit number is the *BFO control parameter*. This number can be changed using the VFO knob, but you'll use a different BFO-setting method described below. The letter **t** after **BF1** is a reminder that the **BF1** BFO frequency is always used on transmit, which is important for SSB operation.

Whenever the BFO control parameter is displayed, you can tap **DISPLAY** to show the actual BFO frequency in kHz. The VFO knob can then be used to set the BFO directly. This method is used in the filter-setup example.

Note: Even though we provide specific BFO frequencies in the filter settings table (Table 8-1), you may find that different settings are closer to optimal, due to slight component variations as well as your filter pitch preference. You can experiment with settings by ear, or refer to our web site for effective alternative setup methods.

Other CAL FIL Operations

When you're in **CAL FIL** you can always tap **XFIL** to change to the next filter, tap **MODE** to change modes, and hold **CW RV** to switch from CW normal to CW reverse. *Whenever you switch modes or filters, the K2 will first record your new settings, if they have been changed.*

BAND+ switches to the filter bandwidth display, and **BAND-** switches to the BFO display. Tapping **MENU** exits **CAL FIL** and returns to the normal display. (On exit from **CAL FIL**, any changes are saved.)

Turning Selected Filters Off

FL2, 3, or 4 can be individually disabled. To turn off a filter, display the filter bandwidth using **CAL FIL**, then set the bandwidth number to **OFF**. (To get to **OFF**, go to **0.00** first, then turn the VFO knob a bit farther counter-clockwise.)

CAL FIL Example (setting up all filters):

Table 8-1 shows the recommended filer settings for a CW-only K2. If you already have the SSB adapter installed, use the SSB settings from the KSB2 manual.

1. Read the CAL FIL instructions on the previous page if you haven't already. You'll need to be familiar with CAL FIL displays and controls before proceeding.
2. Do the **Basic CAL FIL Setup** from the previous page exactly as described. You should then see a display similar to **FL1 1.50c**.
3. Using the VFO knob, set **FL1** to the value shown for CW Normal (1.50). Tap XFIL to save the new value and move to **FL2**. (The CW Reverse bandwidth will also be updated.)
4. Set up **FL2**, **FL3**, and **FL4** in the same manner.
5. Use XFIL to return to **FL1**. Tap BAND- to show **BF1**.
6. Tap DISPLAY to show the actual BFO frequency. Use the VFO knob to select the value shown in the table. Typically you'll be able to get to within +/- 20 Hz of the target frequency.
7. Tap XFIL to save the new value and move to **BF2**. Repeat steps 6 and 7 to set up **BF2**, **BF3**, and **BF4**.
8. Switch to CW Reverse by holding CW RV. Then repeat steps 6 and 7 for each CW Reverse BFO setting (**BF1**-**BF4**).
9. Tap BAND+ to return to the filter bandwidth display. Use the MODE switch to select LSB, and return to **FL1** using XFIL.
10. Set up each LSB filter bandwidth according to the table. (This also updates the USB filter bandwidths.)
11. Tap BAND- and set up each LSB BFO as you did for CW.
12. Tap MODE to select USB, and set up each USB BFO.
13. If you use settings that differ from the defaults, record them in Table 8-2. Use pencil, since you may change them later.

Table 8-1. Recommended Filter and BFO Settings, CW-only K2

Mode	FL1	BF1	FL2	BF2	FL3	BF3	FL4	BF4
CW Norm.	1.50	4913.1	0.70	4913.1	0.40	4913.1	0.10	4913.0
CW Rev.		4914.7		4914.3		4914.3		4914.2
LSB	2.20	4913.0	2.00	4913.0	1.80	4913.0	1.60	4913.0
USB		4916.4		4916.0		4915.5		4915.3

Table 8-2. Filter and BFO Settings Used

Mode	FL1	BF1	FL2	BF2	FL3	BF3	FL4	BF4
CW Norm.								
CW Rev.								
LSB								
USB								

Basic K2 Operation

Mode Selection

Tap **MODE** to cycle through the three operating modes, noting the change in the mode indicator letter. The last operating mode selected for each band is saved for the next power-up.

Sideband Inversion: The K2 inverts the sideband on 15 meters and above due to the frequency mixing scheme used (that is, the upper and lower sidebands of the signal become reversed). In CW Normal mode, the pitch of CW signals goes up with frequency on the lower bands, while on 15 m and above the pitch goes down with frequency.

Receiver Configuration

Gain Controls: The RF GAIN control should normally be set fully clockwise. Adjust the AF GAIN control for comfortable headphone or speaker volume. To set sidetone volume, use the **ST L** menu entry.

Crystal Filter Selection: Each operating mode provides up to four filter settings, FL1 through FL4. Each filter's bandwidth and BFO setting can be set independently using **CAL FIL**. Tapping the **XFIL** button cycles through the four filters. FL2, 3, or 4 can be turned OFF for any particular mode using **CAL FIL**.

Filters and Operating Modes: The CW Normal and CW Reverse crystal filter selections are tied together. For example, if you switch to FL2 when in CW Normal mode, CW Reverse also switches to FL2. The same applies to the LSB and USB modes.

Checking Filter Status: You can check the current filter number and its bandwidth without changing filters by holding **XFIL** + **AGC**. For example, you might see **FL2 0.80c**.

Audio Filter Control: If you have the audio filter option installed, holding **AFIL** will allow you select its operating mode. For more information, refer to the audio filter option manual.

Preamp: When operating on higher bands, you'll probably want to use the preamp (about +14 dB) to improve the overall signal-to-noise ratio. If you experience very strong in-band interference, you may need to turn the preamp off.

Attenuator: If necessary, an additional 10 dB of attenuation can be switched in by turning on the attenuator. This is more effective than using the RF GAIN control in the case of strong-signal overload.

Scanning: See Advanced Operating Features, page 96.

Antenna Selection: If you have the KAT2 automatic antenna tuner installed, the **ANT 1/2** switch will toggle between the two ATU antenna jacks. This also instantly recalls the ATU's stored L-C parameters for each antenna. Refer to the KAT2 manual for details.

Noise Blanker Controls: The noise blanker is always turned OFF on power-up, and you should leave it off unless needed. When it is turned on, the receiver will be more susceptible to interference from strong signals. To turn on the noise blanker, tap the **NB** button. You'll see **NB1**, **NB2**, and **OFF** in that order. The **NB1** and **NB2** modes provide short or wide pulse blanking intervals, respectively. One may be more effective than the other, depending on the type of noise. In either mode, the NB annunciator will turn on.

The noise blanker provides two thresholds of noise detection: high and low. If you hold **LEVEL** the noise blanker will toggle between these two modes, with the display showing **HI THR** or **LO THR**. High threshold is the default and should be used in most cases. If you select low threshold, the noise blanker may be more effective on certain types of noise, but it will also leave the receiver more vulnerable to strong in-band signals. When **LO THR** is selected, the NB annunciator flashes as a reminder.

LCD and Bargraph Configuration

Day/Night Selection: If you're operating outdoors, use the menu to select **LCD DAY**, which turns off the LCD backlight and puts the bargraph into high-brightness mode. Indoors or at night, use **LCD NITE**, which turns the backlight on and reduces the bargraph brightness.

Bargraph Modes: You have a choice of **OFF**, **DOT**, or **BAR** for the LED bargraph. If you select **DOT**, just one bargraph segment representing the current meter level will be illuminated. If you select **BAR**, all LED segments to the left of the current level will also be illuminated, resulting in a more visible display. **OFF** mode turns off the bargraph completely during receive but uses DOT mode on transmit (see Advanced Operating Features).

Display Modes: Tapping the DISPLAY button alternates between **frequency** display mode and **voltage/current** display mode. Other display modes may be available depending on installed options.

In frequency display mode, the LCD will show the operating frequency, mode indicator, and any annunciators that are enabled, e.g. **24945.04c**. This is the display you'll use most often.

In voltage/current display mode, the LCD will show supply voltage (E) in 0.1 V increments and supply current (I) in 0.02 A increments, e.g. **E13.8i1.40**. Voltage/current display is useful for monitoring battery condition and transmitter performance. It can also be used in conjunction with a simple voltage probe to check DC voltages inside the K2.

A two-position slide switch on the control board, S1, selects either 12 V monitoring or the voltage probe (P5). If the voltage/current display shows **0.0** volts, it is likely that you have S1 in the probe position.

Frequency and Band Selection

The basic K2 kit covers the 80 through 10 meter bands. If you have the 160 m/RXANT option installed, 160 meters will also be available. You can also tune well above and below most bands, and can listen to WWV at 10, 15, and 20 MHz.[16]

Transmit Limits: Some countries require transmit to be disabled outside of specified amateur bands. Your K2 may include such limits encoded in firmware. If you key the transmitter with the VFO set outside the usable range, you'll see **End** on the LCD.

You can change bands in one of three ways:

- tap BAND+ or BAND-
- hold RCL (memory recall); see below
- use Direct Frequency Entry (described later)

Whenever you change bands or recall a frequency memory, your current operating frequency, mode, and a number of other band-related parameters are saved in nonvolatile memory (EEPROM). This update also occurs periodically if you've moved the VFO (see Backup Timer). The parameters that are saved on a per-band/per-memory basis include:

- A and B VFO frequencies and VFO tuning rate
- Current VFO (A or B)
- Operating mode (CW, USB, LSB) and CW Normal/reverse
- AGC slow/fast
- Preamp and attenuator on/off
- Noise blanker on/off (requires noise blanker option)
- ANT1/2 selection (ATU option)
- Receive antenna on/off (160 m/RX ant. option))

[16] The receiver is not intended to be general coverage; narrow band-pass filters are used at the front end to reject out-of-band signals. If you attempt to tune too far outside an available band, receiver sensitivity and transmit power will greatly decrease, and at some point the synthesizer will lose lock.

Default Frequency Memories: When you first turn on the K2, each band memory is preset as follows:

- VFO A is set to the first multiple of 100 kHz above the band edge (e.g. 7100, 24900).
- VFO B is set to the U.S. CW QRP frequency for that band
- Other defaults include: CW mode; VFO A; fast AGC; preamp ON above 40 meters and OFF on 40 m and below; noise blanker OFF and high threshold; antenna 2 OFF (antenna 1 selected); receive antenna OFF (normal receive operation)

Memories #1-8 are preset to the same values as the 160-10 meter band memories, respectively.

Store and Recall: Ten memories are provided, numbered 0 through 9. Each memory stores the same information that is stored per-band.

To store the current setup in a frequency memory, hold STORE until you see **ENT 0-9**, then tap one of the numeric keypad switches. To recall a stored setup, hold RCL until you see **ENT 0-9**, then tap the number of the memory you wish to recall. In both cases you can cancel the operation by tapping any non-numeric switch.

Note: If you *hold* rather than *tap* a numeric keypad digit when doing either a store or recall, you will initiate *scanning*. (See page 96.)

Direct Frequency Entry: To do direct frequency entry, *hold* both BAND+ and BAND- simultaneously. When you see "-----" on the LCD, release the two switches, then enter the target frequency using the numeric keypad. To enter a frequency in the 160 meter band, you must enter 5 digits, starting with a leading *0*, e.g. 0 1 8 3 5. For other bands below 10 MHz, you need only enter 4 digits (e.g., 7 0 4 0).

There are three possible results from using direct frequency entry:

- If you enter a frequency *within* the current band, only the current VFO will be updated.
- If you enter a frequency that is in a different band, a band change results, and the entire configuration for the target band will be loaded, except that the current VFO will now be at the frequency you just entered.
- If you enter a frequency that is too far outside any available band, you'll be switched to the closest available band, and the frequency will be set to the one last used on that band. For example, if you try to switch to 8400 kHz--which is typically outside the range of the synthesizer--the K2 will switch to 40 meters and setup the VFOs as they last were on this band.

Tuning Rates: Three VFO tuning rates are provided, selected by tapping the RATE switch. Tuning rates include 10 Hz, 50 Hz, and 1 kHz per step, resulting in 1 kHz, 5 kHz, and 100 kHz per VFO knob turn. 50 Hz/step is ideal for casual "hunting," while 10 Hz/step provides very fine tuning. 1 kHz/step is useful for quickly moving to another part of the band. The tuning rate used on each band is stored in EEPROM.

The frequency display changes to remind you of the current tuning rate. At 10 Hz/step, two decimal places are shown (100 Hz and 10 Hz). When you select 50 Hz/step, the 10 Hz digit is blank. When you select 1 kHz/step, both decimal places are blank.

VFO Lock: The current VFO frequency can be locked by holding the LOCK switch until **LOC** is displayed. The decimal point will then flash slowly as a reminder. **Split Operation:** Lock applies only to the *current* (receive) VFO. So, while you are holding the REV switch (temporary VFO reverse), you can change the frequency of the *other* VFO (transmit), overriding lock. This is very useful when operating SPLIT, since it allows you to check and modify your transmit frequency without unlocking the receive VFO.

Holding the switch again cancels lock and displays **NOR** (normal).

Power Control

Turn the POWER control to set the power output directly in watts (e.g., **P 5.0**). The range of the control is 0.1 to 15 watts in 0.1–watt steps (0.2-W above 10 W), although the accuracy of the setting will vary depending on the load impedance. In CW mode, you must send a few CW characters or press **TUNE** to allow the ALC (automatic level control) to lock-in the new power level.

Requested vs. Actual Power: The POWER control sets the *requested* power, which may exceed the *actual* power that the transmitter can achieve. To see actual power output, use TUNE (see below). In tune mode, the display always shows the actual power output (except when the display is showing voltage and current, or when the ATU is installed). The power displayed will be accurate to within about 10% if the load at the antenna is matched (50 ohms).

Using TUNE: Hold TUNE to place the transmitter into key-down mode. If you were in LSB or USB mode, the transmitter will switch to CW mode during tune, then return to the previous mode. You'll hear one beep when you start tune, and another when you terminate tune by tapping any switch or hitting the keyer paddle.

ATU: If you have the KAT2 automatic antenna tuner installed, pressing TUNE may trigger a re-tune of the antenna matching network. The power control and display will be much more accurate. See Automatic Antenna Tuner later in this section.

PA: If you have the KPA100 amplifier installed and enabled (using the PA menu option), power control and display range changes to 100 watts. Refer to the KPA100 manual.

Current Limiting: To protect the transmitter and power supply/battery from excess current drain, you can program a transmit current limit using **CAL CUR** (see Calibration Functions).

VFO Selection

To select the A or B VFO, tap A/B. To set the unused VFO equal in frequency to the current VFO, tap A=B. The currently-selected VFO will determine both the transmit and receive frequencies unless you're running SPLIT (see below). A and B VFO frequencies are saved in EEPROM on a per-band basis, and are updated periodically (see Backup Timer at the end of this section).

Split and Reverse Operation

Split operation means transmitting and receiving on different frequencies. This is useful for DX work, since many DX stations will ask you to call them above or below their carrier frequency to avoid interference. To enter split mode, hold SPLIT until the message **SPLIT** appears on the LCD. Holding SPLIT in again will display **NOR** (normal). The active VFO annunciator (A or B) will flash slowly when you're in SPLIT mode to remind you that this feature is enabled and that your receive and transmit frequencies are different. Also, each time you transmit when in SPLIT mode, the transmit frequency is displayed for a minimum of 1/2 second.

When you're using split, you can switch between your transmit and receive frequencies by tapping A/B. However, there are times when you only want to quickly listen on your transmit frequency, not switch VFOs. In this case you can hold in the REV switch (reverse), which temporarily swaps the VFOs. When you release REV, the LCD will return immediately to the receive frequency. When using split, experienced operators can simultaneously hold in the REV switch and adjust the VFO knob--all with one hand--to quickly find a clear spot to transmit. (REV overrides VFO lock as described previously.)

RIT and XIT

You can turn on RIT (receive incremental tuning) by tapping the **RIT** switch. The RIT annunciator then turns on. It also flashes slowly if you have selected wide-range RIT/XIT offset (see Potentiometers, page 81). The knob below **RIT** and **XIT** controls the receive offset (+/- 0.6 normally, or +/- 1.2 kHz if wide range is selected).

The +1 and -1 kHz marks on the offset control apply in wide-range mode. In low-range mode, these marks indicate the +0.5 and -0.5 kHz points. In either case, the exact offset can be determined by comparing the frequency displays with RIT on and off.[17]

When XIT is turned on, it works similarly to RIT, except that the *transmit* frequency is varied with the offset control. This can be useful for small-split operation (for example, when a DX station you're listening to says to call "UP 1" kHz), or to adjust your transmitted frequency at the request of another station. The transmitted frequency is not displayed at all times, so if you need to determine the exact setting of the offset control when using XIT, you can briefly turn on RIT.

It's OK to have both XIT and RIT on at the same time. In this case the offset control can be thought of as an extension to the main tuning knob, but covering only a small frequency range.

As with SPLIT, if you have RIT or XIT enabled, the transmit frequency will be displayed when you transmit and the receive frequency will be restored a minimum of 1/2 second later.

[17] We did not include detent on the offset knob because experience has shown that knob detent mechanisms degrade over time, making it difficult to adjust the offset near the zero point. However, you can always return the offset knob to the zero point by simply matching the RIT-on and RIT-off frequency displays, or you can turn RIT off.

Automatic Antenna Tuner (ATU)

If the internal automatic antenna tuner (model KAT2) is installed, you can match nearly any coax-fed or random-length antenna on multiple bands. A low-power balun can be used with balanced lines.

The KAT2's operating mode is selected using the **ATU** menu entry, and is normally set to **AUTO**. The tuner is activated whenever you press **TUNE**, and can display SWR, forward/reflected power, the present inductance or capacitance, L-network network configuration, and other parameters.

Two antenna jacks are provided on the ATU, with the matching network data for both antennas stored on a per-band basis. Once an initial match has been obtained for both antennas on a particular band, you can tap **ANT 1/2** to switch between them. Since the relays take only a small fraction of a second to switch, it becomes practical to quickly try both antennas anytime the distant station is weak. This is particularly useful for Field-Day and similar contests, where you might use two end-fed random wires running in different directions.

For complete details on operating the ATU, refer to the KAT2 manual.

Backup Timer

While you're moving the VFO, a 30-second data backup timer is being continuously re-started. Once you have completely *stopped* tuning the VFO for at least 30 seconds, the K2 will then save your current operating frequency in EEPROM. As long as you stay on a particular frequency, no further updates will be done.

By backing up the frequency data only when you move and then stop for at least 30 seconds, the last *significant* frequency that you were on is saved--i.e., the last one where you may have had a QSO or listened for a while.

CW Operation

The K2 provides a number of features for the CW operator:

- fast I.F.-derived AGC with fast/slow/off control
- full break-in operation with no relays
- accurate control of CW speed, sidetone volume, and sidetone pitch/receive offset
- built-in memory keyer with Iambic modes A and B, plus nine programmable message buffers with chaining and auto-repeat
- "smart" scanning (see Advanced Operating Features)
- software-selectable paddle selection (normal or reverse)
- multiple crystal filter bandwidths and opposite-sideband CW
- dedicated **SPOT** switch for accurate signal pitch matching.
- optional low-noise analog audio filter

This section explains how to get the most out of the K2's CW features.

Keying Device Selection

A single connector in the back is provided for your keyer paddle, hand key, keyer, or computer. It is also possible to connect both a paddle and an external keyer or computer at the same time (see External Keying Auto-Detect, below).

You must use a *stereo* (2-circuit) plug, even if you use only a hand key or external keyer. This should not affect the use of the keying device with other equipment, since the middle contact on the plug (often called the "ring" contact) is only used with keyer paddles.

Hand key or External Keying Device: To use a hand key or external keying device, select **INP HAND** using the menu. You can key the K2 externally at up to 70 WPM.

Internal Keyer: To use a keyer paddle, use the menu to choose **INP PDLn** or **INP PDLr** (normal or reverse paddle). With **PDLn** selected, the "tip" contact on the stereo key jack is DOT and "ring" (the middle contact) is DASH. **PDLr** is the reverse.

External Keying Auto-Detect: If you wish to connect a handkey, external keyer or computer along with a keyer paddle, you can use the K2's "auto-detect" feature. Simply connect your external keying device to the DOT and DASH lines through two diodes as shown in Figure 8-1, along with the keyer paddle. Be sure you have selected **INP PDLn** or **INP PDLR** in the menu.

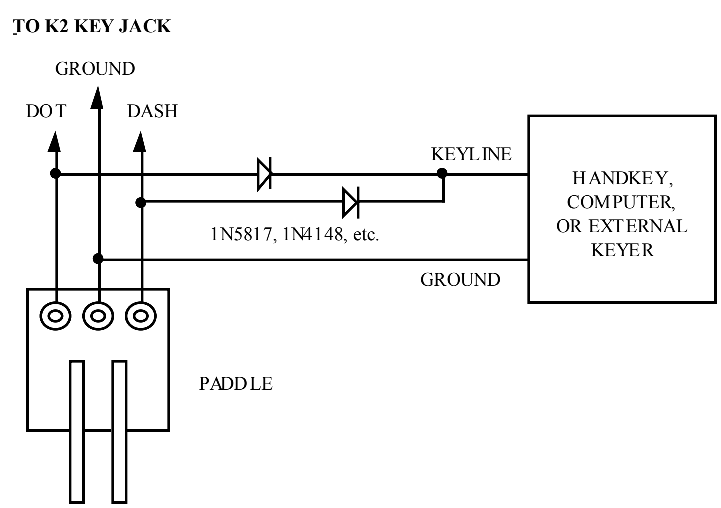


Figure 8-1

When you connect the keying devices in this way, you can continue to use the paddle as usual. But if the external keying device is keyed, both the DOT and DASH lines will be pulled low simultaneously via the diodes. The K2 firmware interprets this as direct external keying rather than as DOT or DASH triggers.

Basic CW Setup

Mode Selection: To place the rig in CW mode, tap the **MODE** switch until the mode indicator changes to *C*.

Filter Selection: You can select one of the filters using the **XFIL** switch. FL1 is typically configured as the widest filter. If you have the SSB adapter installed, you'll probably want to use **CAL FIL** configure FL1 as OP1 (SSB option filter) in CW and CW reverse modes, and leave FL2-4 at the narrower factory defaults (0.7, 0.4, and 0.1). Details on how to do this setup can be found in the SSB adapter manual.

CW Frequency Display: In CW mode, the frequency shown on the LCD takes into account an offset equal to your sidetone pitch. This allows you to determine a station's actual carrier frequency by matching their pitch to your sidetone, rather than by zero-beating the signal. The **SPOT** button can be used for this purpose.

Operate vs. Test mode: If you want to try out the keying without actually transmitting, hold the **VOX** switch until the display shows **TEST**. The mode letter *C* on the LCD will flash to remind you that you have disabled transmit. Holding the **VOX** switch in again returns to **OPERate**.

Sidetone Setup: Key the rig in **TEST** mode and listen to the sidetone volume and pitch. To change the volume, use the menu's **ST L** entry (sidetone level). The pitch can be changed using the **ST P** entry (sidetone pitch). **ST L** is used often, so you might want to assign it to **PF1** or **PF2** (see Advanced Operating Features).

Break-in (QSK) delay: The QSK delay is set using the **T-R** menu option. A setting of **0.00** is fastest but some operators may find the keying harsh, in which case **0.01** is a good compromise. **0.05** is about right for casual operation. You can select a longer delay (up to 2.5 seconds) for slower CW work or to prevent un-muting when sending a repeating beacon message.

The SPOT Switch

The **SPOT** switch can be used to zero-in on received signals or to test your sidetone pitch quickly, without having to key the transmitter or enter the menu. It's important to use **SPOT** before using CW reverse. Once a signal has been SPOTted, you'll only hear a slight change in pitch when you use the **CW RV** switch.

When you use **SPOT**, the receiver audio will not be muted. This allows you to listen to another station and turn the VFO knob until the pitch of the received signal matches that of the sidetone. Once the two match, you'll be very close to the station's frequency if you call. (Exception: If you're using **RIT**, **XIT**, or **SPLIT**, your transmit and receive frequencies will differ by more than just the normal transmit/receive offset. Turn off these features when using **SPOT**.)

Unfortunately, matching audio pitch is a little tricky for some operators. Basically, you'll need to tune the VFO up and down until the station you're hearing seems to "disappear" under the sidetone--that is, until you can't hear any difference between the two. When this happens, you'll know the two pitches are matched.

Using the Internal Keyer

Two menu entries are provided to set up the keyer:

- **IAB** allows you to select Iambic mode **A** or **B**. (Mode **A** is similar to Curtis mode A; mode **B** is similar to Super CMOS Keyer III mode B. If you aren't sure which to use, start with mode A, which has less critical timing requirements.)
- **INP** selects paddle normal (**PDLn**), paddle reverse (**PDLr**), or hand key/ext. keyer (**HAND**)

These settings are stored in EEPROM, so you won't lose them when you turn power off.

Use the KEYER control to select the desired CW speed. The display shows the speed in WPM as soon as you start turning the knob. You can adjust the keyer speed even while transmitting.

Message Memories

The K2 provides nine CW message memories of 153 bytes each. Playback features include message repeat and 1-level chaining. CW messages can only be recorded using a keyer paddle connected directly to the K2's key jack. Set **INP** to **PDLn** or **PDLr**.

To record a message: Hold **REC**, and when prompted tap a numbered switch (#**0**-**8**) to select one of the nine message buffers. The display will then show REC 153, indicating that 153 bytes of storage are available in this message buffer. This number will count down toward 0 as long as you are sending. Whenever you stop sending, up to two standard-length word spaces will be inserted. To stop recording, tap **MSG**. If you do this *before* starting to send, the original message contents will not be lost.

To play back a message: Tap **MSG**, then select a message buffer (#**0**-**8**). Message play can be canceled at any time by hitting **MSG** again or by tapping the keyer paddle. To listen to a message without transmitting, use **TEST** mode (**VOX** button).

Auto-Repeat: Any message memory can be auto-repeated when played. To auto-repeat, tap **MSG** as usual, then *hold* the desired numbered switch (#**0**-**8**). The message will then play back continuously until you tap **MSG** again or hit your key or paddle. The buffer # will flash at the end of each transmission (e.g., **B6**).

Note: You cannot change the frequency with the VFO knob during a repeating message, but you can use RIT (if enabled) to listen above and below your receive frequency between calls.

Setting the Auto-Repeat Interval: The length of the pause between messages during auto-repeat can be programmed using the **RPT** menu entry (0-255 sec.). Long delays are useful for beacons.

Message Chaining and chain/repeat: While a message is playing, you can tap any numbered button (#**0**-**8**) to chain a message onto the end of the current one. The buffer number will be displayed twice: once when you hit the numbered button, and again when the chained message starts. To chain a repeating message onto the current message, HOLD rather than TAP the numbered button (i.e., use #**0**-**8**). Chaining is useful during contests. For example, you might set up message 5 as "QSL 73" and message 6 as "CQ TEST DE N6KR." You could then hit **MSG** **5** **6** at the end of a QSO to sign with the previous contact, then begin a *repeating* CQ.

CW Reverse

CW Reverse allows you to listen to CW using the opposite sideband. Sometimes this can eliminate or reduce interference from a strong station without reducing the strength of the desired signal. To switch to the opposite sideband, hold the **CW RV** (CW reverse) switch. A bar will appear above the mode letter *C* on the LCD. (Use **SPOT** first to stay on frequency when you switch to CW reverse.)

Sidetone Pitch and Receive Offset

When you change the sidetone pitch using the **ST P** menu entry, you're also changing the CW receive offset. The two always match within approximately 10 Hz. This ensures that when you listen to other stations at same pitch as the sidetone, your transmitted signal will be right on that station's frequency.

To see how the receive offset tracks the sidetone pitch, try this experiment. First, use **SPOT** to tune in a station at your current sidetone pitch as described earlier. Then use **ST P** to change the pitch. As soon as you exit the menu, you'll notice that the station you were listening to has also been shifted to the new sidetone pitch.

Changing the sidetone pitch does not shift the BFO in relation to the crystal filter. This will not be a problem if you're using moderate filter bandwidths, e.g. 500 Hz or more. However, if you select a very narrow filter, then change your sidetone pitch by a large amount, you may want to use **CAL FIL** to adjust the BFO settings for new pitch.

SSB Operation

You can use SSB and RTTY (AFSK) modes if you have the KSB2 SSB adapter installed. Basic information on using the SSB adapter is provided here. For complete details, refer to the KSB2 manual.

Microphone Configuration

You'll need to configure the MIC CONFIG header on the front panel board in order to transmit SSB on the K2. Most microphones with standard 8-pin connectors can be used.

Up/Dn Buttons: On many mics, the Up and Down buttons can be configured to switch between VFO A and B. You'll hear one beep on switching to VFO A, and two beeps when switching to VFO B, allowing eyes-free operation.

SSB Controls

SSB Menu Entries: Menu entry **SSBA** is used to set the mic audio level (mic gain), from **1** to **3**. An additional setting, **BAL**, is used during SSB adapter alignment. **SSBC** is used to set the speech compression level, from **1-1** to **4-1**. The SSB adapter manual explains how to optimize these parameters.

Choosing the Operating Mode: To operate in SSB mode, use the MODE button to select *L* (LSB) or *U* (USB). With rare exceptions, LSB is used on 40 meters and below, and USB is used on the higher bands. For RTTY use, either LSB or USB may be appropriate depending on your TU (terminal unit).

PTT/VOX Selection: By default the K2 uses PTT (push-to-talk) via your microphone's PTT switch. To use VOX (voice-operated transmit), hold the VOX button until you see **SPCH 0.4** or **SPCH 1.0** on the LCD. The number 0.4 or 1.0 is the approximate VOX delay time in seconds. Holding VOX again restores the setting to **PTT**.

Power/ALC Metering: If you have the SSB adapter installed, you'll be able to switch between RF and ALC bargraph meter modes by holding RF/ALC. ALC metering is used only in SSB modes, and may help in setting the mic gain and speech compression level. However, we recommend leaving the meter in RF mode for normal operation. The ALC reading starts from the *right* end of the bargraph rather than the left, using BAR mode, so you won't confuse it with the RF display.

Using the SSB Option Filter (OP1)

The SSB adapter has an optimized, fixed-bandwidth filter that is always used on SSB transmit. It also can provide much better SSB receive audio quality than the variable-bandwidth CW filter. The fixed filter is designated **OP1** in **CAL FIL**, and can be used on SSB, RTTY, and CW. Refer to the instructions in the KSB2 manual to select **OP1** and properly configure the BFOs for SSB operation.

RTTY Operation

RTTY (Radioteletype) operation can be accomplished on the K2 by using AFSK, or *audio frequency shift keying*. RTTY audio tones must be fed into the mic jack from your TU (terminal unit), and the K2's audio output routed back to the TU from either the headphone jack or external speaker jack. Either LSB or USB can be used; this will probably be determined by your TU. You can use either the SSB adapter's fixed filter (OP1) or the variable-bandwidth crystal filter for RTTY receive purposes. On transmit, OP1 is always used.

Since RTTY duty cycles approach 100%, you should reduce power output to about 5W or avoid transmitting at 10W for longer than 1-2 minutes at a time. (Power levels above 10 W are not recommended for RTTY.) You can key the transmitter via either the key jack or the mic jack, since the DOT line is also the PTT line.

Additional information on RTTY operation, PSK31, etc. can be found on our web site.

Advanced Operating Features

Once you've mastered the basics of operating the K2, you may wish to explore some of the more specialized features and techniques described in this section. These include:

- scanning
- reducing current drain for portable operation
- using a separate receive antenna
- programmable function keys (PF1/PF2)
- AGC on/off control
- checking firmware revision numbers
- VFO frequency calibration techniques
- resetting configuration parameters to factory defaults

Scanning

The K2's scanning feature lets the K2 tune any band segment continuously, keeping the receiver audio squelched until signals of interest are found. Scanning works for both CW and SSB signals, and when properly set up will ignore most stable carriers (key-down signals with no modulation). It is especially useful for automating "search and pounce" (starting at one end of a band and working up) and for monitoring your favorite band. Frequent scan users may wish to program **PF2** (or **PF1**) to do SCAN RESUME as described below, since this allows you to quickly continue scanning from where you left off.

To use scanning:

- Setup VFOs A and B for the two ends of the band of interest. VFO A must be set for a frequency *lower* than VFO B (a minimum of 2 kHz separation is recommended).
- Select the desired operating mode, preamp/attenuator selection, and tuning rate; see scanning tips below.
- Store this setting in any memory (using the **STORE** button), but instead of tapping the switch for the desired memory, *hold* the numbered switch to initiate scanning (**0**-**9**). You can also initiate scanning when you recall a stored memory. Just hold **RCL**, then hold the numbered switch in as with **STORE**. You can keep up to 10 of your favorite scan ranges around for instant recall by using the memories.
- When a station is found, the receiver will stay on that frequency for about 25 seconds or until the signal fades or disappears.
- If the scan routine finds a station but you'd like to listen to it at a different pitch or move past the signal manually, you can turn the VFO knob without exiting scan mode. This is absolutely necessary when scanning for SSB signals.
- You can exit scan mode by tapping any switch or hitting your key or paddle. Use SCAN RESUME (below) to restart scan.

What you'll see during scanning: Once scanning is initiated, the receiver will be squelched and the VFO will start tuning up the band starting at the VFO A frequency. When the frequency of VFO B is reached, VFO A's frequency will be re-loaded. During scanning, the MHz decimal point flashes quickly. When the scanning routine finds a signal, this decimal point is flashed more slowly. Once a signal has disappeared or 25 seconds have elapsed, the frequency will be incremented by 0.5 kHz and scan resumed. This usually prevents CW signals from locking in a second time.

Another thing you'll observe if you watch the frequency display is that the scanning routine will stop scanning and "examine" each carrier for about 1 second to see if it is varying in amplitude. The receiver will not be unsquelched when it sees unmodulated carriers, unless very fast fading is also present.

Tips for successful scanning:

- Use a narrow filter if the band is even moderately noisy--otherwise the scanning routine will stop too often on noise.
- Scan at 10 Hz/step or 50 Hz/step unless you're trying to cover a very broad frequency range; if you use 1 kHz/step you'll need to use a wider bandwidth setting.
- If scanning seems to be locking onto noise too often, you can tailor the lock rate by backing down the RF GAIN control, even while scanning is in progress.

Scan Resume: Often you may wish to stop scanning, then pick up where you left off. To do this, you can program **PF2** (or **PF1**) to do scan resume. (**PF2** is more often used for this, since **PF1** is frequently programmed as the RIT/XIT range control.)

Once scan resume has been assigned to a programmable function button, simply tap any switch or the keyer paddle to stop scan, and hold **PF2** (or **PF1**) to re-start it. You'll hear one BEEP when you stop scan, and another beep when you resume it. The frequency will jump up 0.5 kHz to avoid having scan re-lock on the same station.

Reducing Current Drain for Portable Operation

You can use any of the methods listed below to reduce receive-mode current drain and thus extend battery life. These techniques will have only a small effect on *transmit* current drain, however. Reduce power output to the lowest effective level if you're transmitting frequently on a weak battery.

- Use headphones or reduce speaker volume.
- Turn off the RF preamp.
- Set **GRPH** to **DOT** mode.
- Set **OPT** (Optimization) to **BATT** (battery); this reduces the I.F. post-mixer amplifier current by about 40 mA and automatically forces the bargraph to use **DOT** mode if set for **BAR**. Receive performance is minimally affected by this setting unless you have very strong in-band stations nearby.
- Set **GRPH** to **OFF**; this completely disables the S-meter and forces **DOT** mode for transmit power display.
- Set **LCD** to **DAY** to turn off the **LCD** backlight. This is most effective if you also set **GRPH** to **OFF**, since each bargraph LED segment that is turned on in **DAY** mode uses about 18 mA. (Each segment uses only 6 mA in **NITE** mode.)

Note: Voltage/current display mode can be used to verify the effect of each setting. All of these settings are stored in EEPROM so they will be in effect whenever you turn the K2 on.

Using a Separate Receive Antenna

If you have installed the 160 m/RXANT option, you'll be able to use a separate receiving antenna. This capability is included with the 160–m option because such an antenna is frequently used on 160 meters. However, the receive antenna switch can be used on any band, and is configured on a per-band basis. Your receive antenna must be connected to the RCV ANT jack on the lower rear panel.

To enable the receive antenna, you must first switch to the desired band. Next, use the menu to change the **RANT** option to **ON**. This will affect only the current band. If you anticipate switching between the normal and receive antennas often, you can program one of the two programmable function buttons for **RANT** (see below).

Another use for the receive antenna switch is in conjunction with an external transmit attenuator, for very low power operation (QRPp). You can use one or two antennas. If two antennas are used, the setup is straightforward: simply put the attenuator in line with the transmitter's antenna. If you wish to use a single antenna, you can use a BNC *Y* adapter connected to the RCV ANT jack. Connect the antenna to one side of the *Y*, then run a small coaxial cable from the other side of the *Y* to the transmit attenuator output. This configuration will result in a small (approx. 3 dB) loss in receive signal strength due to the extra load that the attenuator presents to the receiver.

Programmable Function Keys (PF1/PF2)

The **PF1** and **PF2** switches (below **RIT** and **XIT**, respectively) can be programmed as direct edit shortcuts to any two menu entries of your choice. (See Edit Shortcut in the Menu section.)

In addition to the standard menu functions, two special functions can be assigned to **PF1** or **PF2**: RIT/XIT RANGE (**RIT**) and SCAN RESUME (**SCAN**). RIT/XIT range selection is covered in the Controls and Display section. Scan Resume is covered under Scanning, earlier in this section.

To program **PF1** or **PF2**, enter the menu and scroll to **PF1** or **PF2**, then change the parameter to the desired entry. To use **PF1** or **PF2**, simply HOLD that switch, then change the parameter (which will be flashing) using the knob or **BAND+** / **BAND-** switches. To return to normal operation, tap any switch or the keyer paddle. Exceptions: The RIT/XIT RANGE and SCAN RESUME functions take effect immediately.

AGC On/Off Control

Some operators prefer to turn AGC off and use manual gain control under certain weak-signal conditions. To turn off AGC, *hold* both the **PRE/ATT** and **AGC** switches simultaneously. Release the switches when you see **OFF** flashed on the LCD. To remind you that AGC is off, the decimal point to the left of the mode indicator will flash slowly. Received signals will no longer affect the S-meter level. Turning the RF GAIN control counter-clockwise will increase the S-meter reading.

Frequency Calibration Techniques

The VFO is only as accurate as the 4.000 MHz oscillator on the control board, which is calibrated using C22. C22 can be fine-tuned using one of the following methods:

Using an External Counter or Ham-Band Receiver:

These methods are described in detail in Alignment, Part II (**4 MHz Oscillator Calibration**). After setting C22 using either technique, you must re-run **CAL PLL** on all bands (with the counter probe on TP1). You'll also need to use **CAL FIL** (with the probe on TP2) to re-adjust each BFO setting, which will force the K2 to store new, more accurate BFO frequency measurements.

Using a Calibrated Signal Source:

You can calibrate C22 using a signal generator, ham transmitter, or strong AM carrier such as WWV at 10 MHz. The K2's receiver is used to zero-beat this signal to determine how far off the VFO is, then C22 is adjusted to compensate. *Because of the way* **CAL PLL** *works, you can only use a signal source that is at one of the lower band edges, e.g. 7000.00 or 10000.00 kHz*. Here's the procedure:

1. Select LSB or USB mode on the K2.
2. Zero-beat the calibrated signal source on the K2, then note the VFO dial error. For example, 10 MHz WWV might zero-beat at 10000.20 kHz. The error is then 10000.20 - 10000.00 = **+0.20**. *Do not move the VFO from this position.*
3. Connect the K2's internal counter to the VCO test point (TP1).
4. Select and activate **CAL FCTR** using the menu.
5. Note the displayed VCO frequency. (In this example, 14913.88 kHz. Your VCO frequency will be somewhat different.)
6. Subtract the VFO dial error from the VCO to obtain a target VCO frequency. (In our example, 14913.88 - 0.20 = **14913.68**.)
7. Adjust C22 until the VCO is at the target frequency.
8. Re-run **CAL PLL** on the *present band* only (see Calibration Functions). Tap **MENU** to exit **CAL PLL** when "End" appears.
9. Move the counter probe to TP2 (BFO). Using **CAL FIL**, change the *BFO control parameter* for the filter presently being used by at least one count, then return it to the original setting. Tap **MENU** to exit without switching filters. This will force the K2 to re-measure the BFO frequency.
10. Repeat step 2. If the VFO dial is still off, repeat steps 3 - 9.
11. Connect the counter probe to TP1. Do **CAL PLL** on *all* bands.
12. Modify *all* BFO settings using **CAL FIL** (as in step 9).

Firmware Revision Numbers

You can check the K2's **main processor** and **I/O controller** firmware revisions by holding in any switch on power-up. Two numbers will then be displayed briefly. For example, you might see **1.04A 1.00**. The first number is the main processor's firmware revision, which may include a letter suffix. The second number is the I/O controller's firmware revision.

The **ATU**'s firmware revision is one of the parameters in the ATU submenu, e.g. **F1.00**. This also applies to the **PA**. The **SSB adapter**'s firmware revision can be obtained by first setting the **SSBA** menu entry to **BAL**, then holding the VOX button. (Return the **SSBA** menu entry to its normal setting after checking the firmware revision.) The firmware revisions for other options may also be accessible; refer to the individual option manuals.

Resetting the Configuration to Factory Defaults

You should reset configuration data to defaults *only* if the K2's EEPROM is accidentally corrupted. (This is extremely unlikely to happen.) The most likely symptom that this has occurred would be an unexpected frequency setting showing up on a particular band, or strange characters appearing on the LCD. Before resetting the configuration to defaults, try simply re-entering the correct frequency and storing it in the affected memory.

Before resetting to defaults, use CAL FIL to obtain your filter and BFO settings, and write them down. You may also wish to record your other CAL settings and other menu parameters.

To reset to defaults: Turn the K2 off, then hold down the 4, 5, and 6 buttons, and turn power back on. The EEPROM will be rewritten with factory defaults.

Computer Control of the K2

If you have the host I/O adapter installed (model KIO2), you'll be able to use a computer to control the K2. You can also read the current operating frequency and other parameters. Refer to the host adapter manual for information on the KIO2's available functions and command set.

The KIO2 also provides some useful auxiliary signals, such as 8 V on transmit.

9. Modifications

It is Elecraft's policy to encourage kit owners to experiment with their own (careful) modifications to kits. You can build in your own accessories and make changes to the circuitry if desired. However, this policy has one firm limitation: If your modification damages the kit or alters normal operation, it may not be repairable by Elecraft should you have difficulty.

All modifications should be done in such a way that they can be easily disabled (turned off, unplugged, etc.). This will allow us to test and repair your kit if it becomes necessary. Repair charges will be higher if our technician has to *un*-modify your modification for any reason.

Improving Transmitter Efficiency at Low Power Levels

The K2 is capable of over 10 W PEP/CW output on 160-10 meters. However, this requires that the transmitter driver and PA stages be biased much closer to class A than they would be if the K2 were a CW-only rig. The result is that the K2 transmitter is *most* efficient at 10 W or higher output, whether on CW or SSB, with efficiency *decreasing* as power decreases.

If you plan to operate exclusively at about 5 W PEP/CW or less, you can wind the PA transformer differently to improve efficiency at this level. Just remove one turn from the 3–4 winding on T4 (making it 2:2 turns) to immediately improve current drain by some 25 to 30% at 5 watts. Additional efficiency modifications may be posted on our web site.

Other Suggested Modifications

- The side panels are quite strong (.080 aluminum), so a carrying handle could be added.
- If you frequently connect both a keyer paddle and an external keyer or computer (using the auto-detect feature), you could install the auto-detect diodes and a second jack on the rear panel. The best location for the jack might be directly above K1 (in the 40-m band-pass filter).
- A transmit attenuator could be built into the top cover, with its own BNC connectors; you could use this to experiment with QRPp (very low power) operation.
- The internal frequency counter can be used to count external signals if you run a coaxial cable from its input to the left side or rear panel. Avoid routing cables near the synthesizer, crystal filters, I.F. amplifier, or PA transistors.
- A low-level audio signal is available at J5 on the RF board (Aux. AF). This signal could be used to drive an external audio filter/amplifier, RTTY terminal unit, etc. You'll need to supply your own connector to get at this signal (3 pin, 0.1" spacing).

10. Theory of Operation

Before reading this section you should become familiar with the schematics (Appendix C) and Block Diagram (Appendix B).

System Overview

The K2's modular design allows flexibility in configuration and provides for future expansion. At the core of this modular architecture are the three main circuit boards:

Front Panel	User interface, including display and controls
Control Board	MCU, DC control, AGC, and AF amplifier
RF Board	All RF circuitry, relays, and I/O controller (IOC)

This functional division allows related circuits to be grouped together, but also provides a high degree of isolation between the analog and digital sections of the transceiver. The RF board serves as a "mother board," while the front panel and control boards plug into the RF board at its front edge. The front panel and control boards are mounted back-to-back, with their ground-plane layers forming a partial enclosure that helps minimize radiated digital noise.

The K2's custom enclosure is also modular. It is fabricated in six pieces, with a unique 2-D fastener used at each joint and also for PCB support. This design provides a rugged but light-weight enclosure that is ideal for field or home use.

The top cover, which includes the upper portion of the rear panel, can support a variety of built-in options such as an internal battery, automatic antenna tuner, and host RS-232 interface. The top cover can be replaced with a 100 W power amplifier module, converting the K2 into a medium-power station.

Signal Flow

The block diagram (Appendix C) shows overall signal flow in the K2. Transmit and receive paths are shown for sideband operation. For CW transmit, the BFO signal is routed directly to the transmit mixer.

The K2 receiver is a single-conversion superhet, utilizing double-tuned band-pass filters on each band and down-conversion to a low I.F (4.915 MHz). This approach results in excellent CW and SSB performance. The low I.F. is compatible with narrow, variable-bandwidth CW crystal filtering and allows the use of fast I.F.-derived AGC. An I.F. of 4.915 MHz also results in nearly no birdies across all nine bands. The BFO is microprocessor controlled to allow upper and lower sideband reception on any band, as well as CW on either sideband. AM signals can be received in SSB modes thanks to the stable VFO, although AM transmit is not currently supported.

Individual (per-band) band-pass filters offer improved intermodulation performance when compared to up-conversion designs that use only a single low-pass filter to remove image products ahead of the receiver. Up-conversion also requires the use of a second I.F. to obtain good CW performance, increasing cost and producing additional spurious signals. (An alternative is up-conversion followed directly by a product detector and audio filter. While this results in minimal parts count, it was not considered since the resulting CW and AGC performance would have been poor.)

On transmit signal flow is reversed, so the BFO is combined with the VCO to generate an output at the operating frequency, which is filtered by the band-pass and low-pass filters. A highly stable power amplifier chain up to 10-15 watts on all bands, and the output level can be set in 0.2-W increments (0.1–W increments below 10 W). The transmit strip is conservatively rated to provide excellent reliability and immunity to high SWR. High-isolation PIN-diode T-R switching is used to provide silent, no-relays QSK. (Please refer to the RF Board section for further details.)

Coverage of 160-10 meters is provided by a single wide-range VCO (voltage-controlled oscillator). High-side and low-side injection are both used, depending on the band, so the overall VCO range is limited to about 6 to 24 MHz. Only one VCO is needed, with a single high-Q inductor and three small DPDT relays configured to select one or more fixed capacitors. The VCO is driven by a PLL synthesizer. 5 kHz frequency steps are used at the PLL, while 10 Hz increments are provided by a 12-bit DAC driving an 11 MHz VCXO (PLL reference oscillator).

Crystal Filters and BFO Settings

The signals you tune in on the K2's receiver are "shaped" by the crystal filter, which passes only a narrow range of frequencies. The *pitch* of these signals is determined by the BFO (beat-frequency oscillator). Figure 10-1 shows an example of how these signals are related. The BFO frequency is *below* the filter passband; this is the case for the CW "normal" and LSB modes on the K2. Two different filters are shown: FL2 (narrow, for CW), and FL1 (wide, for LSB voice). Frequencies in the 4915 kHz range are shown because this is the K2’s *intermediate frequency*, or I.F.

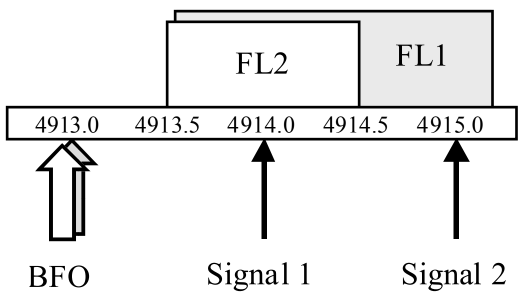


Figure 10-1CW Normal or LSB.

In this example, filter FL2’s bandwidth is set for about 1 kHz, and it is centered at 4914.0 kHz. The BFO is set for 4913.0 kHz.
Signal 1 (4914.0 kHz) will be passed by FL2, and you’ll hear it at an audio pitch of 1 kHz (4914-4913). **Signal 2** (4915.0 kHz) will be rejected by FL2, but passed by FL1, and heard at 2 kHz. The same BFO setting can be used for both filters, because the lower boundary of the K2’s variable-bandwidth crystal filter stays fixed as it is made wider. Only the upper edge moves significantly.

Figure 10-2 shows the BFO positioned *above* the same two filters, which will allow the K2 to receive USB and CW Reverse (opposite-sideband CW). Since the upper boundary of the filter moves as the filter is widened, the BFO frequency must move the same amount. BFO2 is used with FL2, and BFO1 is used with FL1.

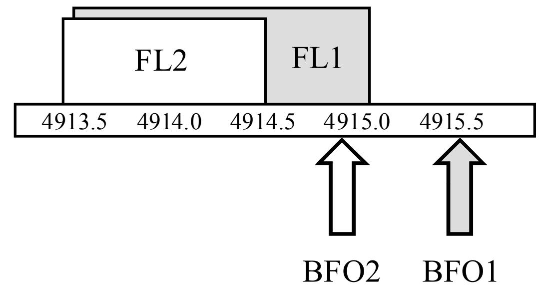


Figure 10-2. CW Reverse or USB.

The **CAL FIL** menu function provides the means to control how wide the filters are, and where the BFOs are located in relation to them. (The numeric parameters you select using **CAL FIL** are translated into voltages that control the filter and BFO by means of voltage-variable-capacitance diodes, or *varactors*.)

Microcontroller (MCU)

The K2’s microprocessor is an integral part of all transceiver operations. Firmware is used to advantage to provide many functions traditionally provided by discrete control logic. For example, the VCXO (PLL reference oscillator) is linearized on each band by a firmware auto-calibration routine, with resulting tables stored in EEPROM. Another example is firmware ALC, which is used on CW to maintain the user-specified power level across all bands. The SSB adapter, when installed, provides its own optimized hardware ALC.

Extensive use of firmware also results in many useful operating features not usually found on transceivers in this price class. These features include built-in test equipment (frequency counter and digital voltmeter), auto-calibration, dual VFOs, memories, split operation, RIT/XIT, and a versatile keyer. Provisions have also been made in firmware to support a wide range of option modules. (See full feature list elsewhere on the web site.)

Latching Relays

Latching relays are used for all filter, VCO, and option switching, so there is no relay current drawn during normal operation. This, combined with careful power control at all stages in the transceiver, results in receive-mode current drain as low as 100 mA. The latching relays are all controlled by a single device, the I/O Controller (see below), which also handles other miscellaneous I/O tasks on the RF board. DPDT relays are used for all filter switching, reducing the number of relays needed by a factor of two. 50-ohm switching is used for all filters, and this combined with careful layout and guard-banding of the relays results in excellent filter input/output isolation.

Co-Processors and the AuxBus

In keeping with the K2's modular system architecture, much of the I/O switching is handled by co-processors. There is only one co-processor in the basic K2, the I/O Controller (IOC). Some option modules, such as the SSB adapter, have their own co-processors. This distributed processing technique allows future modifications to be made to option boards without changing the transceiver itself. It also reduces cost of the basic K2, since fewer main-processor control lines are needed.

The IOC, as well as all co-processors on option modules, go into "sleep" mode with their own 4 MHz clocks suspended during normal operation. For this reason, there is virtually no digital noise on the RF board to cause receiver EMI.

When the operator performs an operation that changes relay states, the main processor (on the control board) wakes up the co-processors and sends one of them a configuration command. These commands are transmitted on a one-wire network called the AuxBus. The AuxBus network line sits at a logic high during normal operation, and is only activated when needed. The receiver is muted during commands, so the operator never hears any digital noise due to AuxBus activity.

Most AuxBus transmissions occur due to operator requests such as a band change. However, the AuxBus may also be used during transmit to relay numeric data such as SWR or ALC from a coprocessor to the main processor. Waking up the coprocessors during transmit has no effect on the transmitted signal.

Front Panel Board

The front panel PC board plugs into the RF board via a 20-pin single-row connector, P1. The Front Panel is made up of a number of user-interface elements as detailed below.

The LCD, DS1, is an 8-digit 7-segment transflective type with three backplanes (triplexed). Its driver, U1, receives display commands via an I^2C interface.[18] The LCD backlight LEDs, D2 and D3, are used to provide enough brightness to handle low-lighting situations ("NITE" mode in the menu), while drawing only a small amount of current (<30 mA). However, they can be turned off when ambient lighting is sufficient ("DAY" mode) because the LCD is transflective, i.e. it can either reflect or transmit light. The LCD displays the operating frequency and status messages, and also has 8 annunciators which indicate the settings of various controls.

A 10-segment LED bargraph, DS2, is used to display received and transmitted signal strength and ALC level. Using the menu, the operator can select OFF, DOT or BAR mode for the bargraph, with OFF or DOT modes typically used to save current during battery operation. U3 and U4 are 8-output MOSFET driver arrays which control the bargraph, among other things. Q1 and Q2 form a brightness control. When the NIGHT(low) control line is pulled to ground by U3, the bargraph supply voltage drops to 2.7 V, resulting in about 6 mA/LED. The LCD backlight is also turned ON in this case. When NIGHT(low) is left high for daytime use, each LED draws about 18 mA, and the LCD backlight is OFF.

A high-quality optical shaft encoder, Z1, provides 100 counts per turn. VFO tuning steps of 10, 50, or 1000 Hz per increment are used, resulting in 1, 5 and 100 kHz per turn, respectively. The encoder is also used to modify parameters in the menu. The encoder can be turned off by U3 to save current under certain operating conditions.

S1-S16 are pushbutton switches. Switch data is read by U2, an 8-bit parallel-to-serial shift register. Each switch has at least two functions: the top label corresponds to a TAP (short press) and the bottom label corresponds to a HOLD (long press, ~0.5s). Switch combinations are also supported, although only two are used (BAND+ and BAND- together enter direct frequency entry mode, and AGC with PRE/ATTN turns AGC on or off).

---

[18] I2C stands for Inter-IC Communication, an industry standard serial interface protocol used by Philips and other IC manufacturers.

Potentiometers R1, R2 and R5 (Keyer Speed, Power Out, and RIT/XIT Offset) are multiplexed onto a single A-to-D input of the MCU, the "VPOTS" line, so their position can be read. Firmware hysteresis is used for these controls to prevent noise from interfering with the readings, with more hysteresis on transmit. The AF GAIN control is not read by the MCU; its leads go directly to the input of the AF amp on the Control Board. (The entire path from product detector to AF amp is balanced to prevent common-mode noise pickup—see Control Board for details.) As is true of most modern transceivers, the RF GAIN control actually controls the receiver's IF gain; it varies the DC control voltage on pin 5 of U12 (RF Board).

The circuitry associated with J2, the mic jack, is only present if the SSB option is installed. P1 is a configuration header that the user can wire as needed to support any of several industry-standard microphones with an 8-pin circular connector. Q3 and its associated resistors are used to multiplex the UP, DOWN, and FUNCTION lines from P1 onto the VPOTS line to allow the mic to send commands to the MCU. The PTT line from the MIC activates the DOT-PTT line to initiate transmit. The MICAF line, mic audio output, is amplified and processed by circuitry on the SSB adapter (see Option Modules).

Control Board

The control board plugs into the RF board via connectors P1, P2, and P3 (along the bottom edge of the schematic). P1 handles for AGC signals while P2 provide miscellaneous I/O. Redundant connections are provided for ground, supply voltages, low-impedance signals (such as audio output) and a few other critical signals.

U6 is a PIC16C77 microcontroller (MCU), with 8 k of EPROM, 300+ bytes RAM, serial I/O, parallel I/O, and A-to-D inputs. It is self-contained with the exception of its 4 MHz crystal oscillator, X2. Even when running at 4 MHz, the PIC processor is very efficient: it only draws a few milliamps at 5 V. Also, since the program and data memories are located on-chip, there is very little noise radiation from the MCU.

To get the most out of the available I/O on the MCU, much of the communication from MCU to the rest of the K2 is done via serial interfaces:

RS232:	Used for communicating with a host computer via P4 (Aux I/O)
I^2C:	Display driver data
SPI:	The serial peripheral interface is used to access various peripherals, including the PLL and DACs.
AuxBus:	1-wire data network for co-processor control
Shift registers:	serial-to-parallel shift registers are used to access MOSFET LED drivers on the front panel; a parallel-to-serial shift register on the front panel is used for reading pushbuttons.

In addition to the microcontroller the control board provides a number of specialized hardware interfaces. Circuitry is described moving from left to right, top to bottom on the schematic.

U10A and associated circuitry are used to accurately control power output as well as provide CW waveform shaping.

Q9 and Q10 form a two-stage amplifier, supplying a square wave signal to the MCU when the frequency counter is enabled and a probe is connected to P6. The counter amp is turned off at all times except when one of the calibration routines is being used.

The four outputs from the quad DAC (U8) provide: audio tones (via U10B), BFO frequency control (U10D), and crystal filter bandwidth control (U10C). Audio tone pitch, amplitude, and wave shape are controlled in firmware to yield clean sidetone from 400-800 Hz, as well as general-purpose tones. The bandwidth control line doubles as the transmitter driver bias control on transmit.

Note: The sidetone signal is actually generated at pin 25 of the microprocessor, while sidetone volume is set by the DAC using Q5 as a variable-drain-voltage saturated switch. The DAC cannot be used to generate sidetone directly because the 60 dB channel-to-channel isolation is not adequate to prevent slight modulation of the VBFO and BVIAS lines on transmit.

U7 provides 2 kbytes of non-volatile configuration data storage. This memory is used for VCO lookup tables, CW messages, frequency memories and other variables that must be permanently saved. The EEPROM can be written millions of times without loss of data. During normal operation on a single frequency (such as when in a QSO), the EEPROM is not accessed at all. However, whenever the VFO is moved, a 30-second timer is triggered. Once the VFO has *stopped* moving for 30 seconds, the EEPROM is updated with the latest VFO frequency. In this way, the K2 always saves the most recent "important" frequency. (The EEPROM update also takes place any time you change bands or operating modes, etc., so you don't have to wait for 30 seconds to record an important configuration change.) An alternative strategy used by many rigs is to use battery-backed-up RAM, continuously recording the operating frequency. However, we preferred to eliminate the backup battery, which often has a high failure rate and must be periodically replaced.

The control board provides a built-in voltmeter and ammeter: Using S1, the operator can monitor either the internal 12 V supply voltage or the voltage from a test probe plugged into P5. U3B buffers the DC signal from the probe, and also is used in conjunction with Q11 to provide supply current monitoring. The current sense resistor, which has a value of 50 milliohms, is located on the RF board (R115).

U4 is a low-dropout 8 V regulator, which is stable with a K2 input DC voltage as low as 8.2 V. Since all signal-generating and signal monitoring stages in the K2 run from this 8 V supply, the transceiver will function normally even when running from very depleted batteries; most transceivers use a higher regulated voltage for these stages and in some cases will not operate reliably even at a battery voltage of 11 V. (Transmit power will be scaled back and a warning message displayed if the battery voltage drops below a critical value or if current drain is excessive.) U5 provides 5 V for logic circuits on the front panel and control board, but this signal does not appear on the RF board, so noise is minimized.

8 V Switching: Q1 and Q2 provide stable +8 V sources on transmit (8T) and receive (8R). (Q23 on the RF board is used to guarantee that 8R goes to 0 V on receive to maintain proper reverse voltage on T-R switch diodes.)

An optional audio filter module can be mounted on the bottom of the control board. This filter will provide analog and/or digital signal processing functions. The audio filter module has its own co-processor so that it can be enhanced in the future.

Q6 and Q7 disconnect the AF amplifier from the product detector on transmit, which is necessary for clean QSK. U9 is an LM380 audio amp IC, supplying approximately 1W of audio drive to a 4-ohm speaker in the cover of the K2. Sidetone is injected post-volume control so that sidetone and receiver audio volume can be controlled independently.

The AGC circuit is the only RF stage located on the control board. Mixer/oscillator U1 generates a low-level signal at about 5.068 MHz, then mixes it with the 4.915 MHz I.F. signal from the RF board to produce a new auxiliary I.F. of about 150 kHz. This auxiliary I.F. signal is then amplified by U2B and detected by D1 to create a positive-going AGC voltage, which is then routed back to the RF board to control the I.F. amp (U12). While it is possible to generate the same AGC voltage by simply amplifying and detecting the 4.915 MHz signal itself, this technique often necessitates shielding of the AGC RF amplifier stages to prevent radiation of the I.F. or BFO signals back into the receiver I.F. strip. We obtain all of the gain at 150 kHz instead, so the 4.915 MHz signal is not re-radiated. 150 kHz is high enough to obtain fast AGC response—two orders of magnitude faster than is possible when audio-derived AGC is employed.

RF Board

The RF board is the largest of the three K2 boards, and serves as a structural element that the chassis and the other boards attach to. This board contains all of the RF circuits (amplifiers, oscillators, filters, etc.). Refer to the RF board schematic (Appendix B).

Sheet 1: Synthesizer

The K2 uses a PLL (phase-locked-loop) synthesizer IC (U4) in conjunction with a wide-range, band-switched VCO (Q18). The synthesizer provides approximately +7 dBm output from 6 to 24 MHz, which is then injected at the transmit and receive mixers (sheet 2). Phase noise performance of the synthesizer is very good despite its low parts count and absence of shielding.

U4 provides coarse tuning (5 kHz steps). Fine steps are achieved using a 12-bit DAC (U5) to tune a voltage-controlled crystal oscillator (Q19), which is the PLL reference oscillator. The reference oscillator range needed on each band varies in proportion to the VCO output frequency. To cover exactly 5 kHz in 10 Hz steps on each band, an automatic calibration routine is provided in firmware. The DAC is swept from its highest output voltage down, and the DAC word needed to select each 100 Hz step is recorded in EEPROM on a per-band basis. 10 Hz steps are then interpolated based on the 100 Hz table data. Crystals X1 and X2 in the PLL reference oscillator have carefully controlled characteristics. They de-Q each other to increase the tuning range of the VCXO to about 10-12 kHz, which is required in order to tune the full 5 kHz on the lowest band (160 m), but still provides better than 10 Hz resolution on the highest bands.

The synthesizer design is unique in that three inexpensive DPDT latching relays are used to select one of eight VCO ranges, thus requiring only a single high-Q VCO inductor (T5). The relays are optimally interconnected to allow for maximum coverage of the nine HF bands, plus a large out-of-band tuning range. Computer simulation was used to find a relay topology that allowed for the use of standard 5% fixed capacitors along with the smallest practical varactor diode capacitance. As a result, the VCO exhibits low noise on all bands and has a low max/min tuning ratio on each band.

In order to provide some allowance for unit-to-unit variance in T5, a much higher value slug-tuned inductor (L30) is placed across T5's high-impedance winding. L30 has only a small effect on the Q of T5, but provides about a 20% tuning range. The combined parallel inductance is very small (only 1 µH), resulting in a very large C/L ratio on the lowest bands.

U3 buffers the VCO signal. Q16/Q17 provide stable ALC to keep the VCO voltage fairly constant over the entire frequency range despite variations in the VCO transistor, Q18.

Also shown on sheet 1 is the DC input circuitry (bottom right-hand corner), which is designed to protect the K2 and its power supply from almost any conceivable mis-connection or short. D10 protects the K2 from reverse polarity at the DC input, while dropping only 0.3 volt. F1 is a thermal self-resetting fuse that goes into a high-resistance state if a short or other high-current situation exists anywhere inside the K2. F1 resets quickly once the source of the short is removed. D12 provides reverse-polarity protection for the internal battery, if applicable.

Sheet 2: Receiver and Low-Level Transmitter Circuits

The receiver is a single-conversion superhet with an I.F. (intermediate frequency) of 4.915 MHz. The preamp and attenuator are switched in using latching relays so that no current is required except when switching them on or off. The mixer is a diode ring type, providing good dynamic range (Z6), and is followed by a strong post-mixer amplifier, Q22. The current drain in Q22 can be reduced by the operator using a menu option that turns off Q12.

A 5-pole variable-bandwidth crystal filter is used on CW (X7-X11). This filter is optimized for use at low bandwidths (~200 to 500 Hz), but can be set both narrower and wider as needed with only a small additional loss. The shape factor and passband ripple content are optimized at around 300 Hz. (On SSB, a separate fixed filter is switched in; this filter is located on the SSB adapter.)

AGC is derived from the output of the I.F. amp by using an auxiliary, low-frequency I.F. of about 150 kHz (see Control Board). The AGC signal is then applied to pin 5 of the I.F. amp (U12).

A second crystal filter (X6/X5) follows the I.F. amp. This filter is also tunable, but over a smaller bandwidth range. Varactor diode D39's capacitance is increased during CW use, but on SSB is quite broad. The product detector is a Gilbert-cell mixer/oscillator (U11). Due to the loss in the second crystal filter, the input voltage to U11 never exceeds the range that the device can handle.

U11 also provides the BFO signal, which is tunable over about a 4 to 5 kHz range by varactor diodes D37 and D38. X3 and X4 have carefully-controlled characteristics and are well matched. As in the PLL VCXO (Q19, sheet 1), the two crystals de-Q each other to increase the tuning range of the BFO.

On transmit, the BFO buffer/attenuator (Q24) is turned on. Q24's drain voltage is controlled by the microprocessor, providing BFO amplitude control. PIN diode D36 provides additional reduction in low-level signal leakage when Q24 is turned off. U10 mixes the VCO with the BFO on transmit, and video amplifier U9 increases the signal level while providing a low-impedance output to drive the bandpass filters (sheet 3).

Sheet 3: Filters and I/O Controller

The band-pass and low-pass filters are switched with latching relays to minimize loss and current drain. Only five band-pass filters and seven DPDT relays are required to cover nine bands (160-10 m). This is accomplished by switching fixed capacitors in or out using two additional relays. For example, on 160 meters, relay K3 places C13 and C14 across the 80 m band-pass filter. But relay K3 also used to switch the 20 meter band-pass filter to 30 meters by shorting C21 and C23 to ground. K6 places C32/C34 across the 15 m inductors to select 17 meters, or C44/C46 across the 10 m inductors to select 12 meters. The band-pass response is a compromise on 80 and 160 meters but on all other bands is similar to what would be obtained with separate filters.

The low-pass filters also serve double-duty in most cases; five filters cover 8 bands (80-10 m). The 30/20 m filter uses three pi-sections to provide good roll-off of the 20 MHz second harmonic when operating on 30 meters. Most of the filters are elliptic, aiding attenuation of specific harmonics. But elliptic filters are not needed on 40 and 80 meters since these each cover only one band. The 2nd harmonic attenuation provided by the push-pull power amplifier is quite good even pre-filter (sheet 4).

DPDT relays are used for the low-pass and band-pass filters rather than the traditional SPDT approach which requires twice as many relays. This is possible by virtue of careful guard-banding techniques on both top and bottom of the PC board in the filter areas. Isolation between input and output of each filter is excellent across the entire frequency range.

The T-R switch (D1-D5) provides very high isolation using low-cost silicon diodes with a PIN characteristic (1N4007). Q2 is a very high-voltage MOSFET that provides a ground path on receive for D3 and D4, but on transmit this transistor can easily handle the high voltages present on the power amplifier collectors.

U1, a low-cost 28-pin PIC microprocessor (16C72), drives all of the latching relays and a few other I/O lines. U1 is referred to it as the I/O controller (IOC) because it handles nearly all I/O functions for the main processor. It also has the job of determining whether the 160 m/RXANT option board is installed by sensing the presence or absence of the two relays on the module. Finally, the IOC contains all of the per-band and per-memory initialization data in ROM, which is sent to the main processor as needed to initialize EEPROM data tables. A number of different regional band plans and other customized parameters can be accommodated in U1's data tables.

The latching relays are wired with a single common drive line so that when one relay needs to be turned on or off, the others are pulled in the opposite direction. This arrangement requires no drivers of any kind. U1's I/O lines are protected from relay transients by its own internal shottky clamping diodes to 6 V and ground. Measured transients are well within the current rating of the clamping diodes. Transients are reduced in amplitude by the series resistance of the other non-switched relays and U1's own MOSFET driver impedance. The relays are rated at 5 V nominal (250-ohm coils). The actual impressed voltage is in the 5 V to 6 V range, depending on ambient temperature, reflecting the best and worst-case sink/source current limits of the 16C72.

The IOC communicates with the main processor over the 1-wire AuxBus. U1's 4 MHz clock is turned off and the device is in sleep mode at all times, except when it is processing an AuxBus message, so there is no digital noise on receive. The main processor runs from a 5 V supply, while the IOC runs from 6 V. The AuxBus is designed to accommodate devices running at both voltage levels.

Sheet 4: Transmitter Amplifier

Q5 and Q6 are class-A pre-driver and driver stages, respectively. Q5's bias is provided directly by the 8 V transmit line (8T), while Q6's bias is switched on by the 8T line but is gated by Q10. This is necessary because the DAC output that supplies the bias voltage for the driver is used as the crystal filter bandwidth control voltage on receive. The bias to Q6 can be varied under firmware control to optimize efficiency for CW vs. SSB and at different output levels. This is useful in maintaining high overall efficiency during battery operation.

Q7 and Q8 form a conservatively-rated push-pull power amplifier that can easily supply 10 watts or higher output on all bands. Q11 and Q13 are used as a bias voltage regulator. The bias regulator is effectively out of the circuit on CW because of the large size of resistor R62, resulting in approximately a class-B bias level. On SSB, resistor R63 is grounded by the I/O controller, causing much more current flow through Q13 and stabilizing the bias for class AB operation. R60 is adjusted for the desired class AB standing current using voltage/current monitor mode on the LCD.

11. Internal Options

The K2 can be customized using a variety of internal options, which are briefly described in this section. Options which are planned but not available at the time of this writing are indicated by (**). For price and availability of option kits, contact Elecraft (sales@elecraft.com) or visit our web site.

If you press a switch associated with a missing option module, you'll see **NOT INST** (not installed) on the LCD, and associated menu parameters will be displayed as "**--**".

KSB2 SSB Adapter: The KSB2 allows the K2 to transmit and receive LSB and USB as well as RTTY (AFSK). VOX and PTT modes are supported, with transmit power output of up to 15 watts (PEP). The adapter's crystal filter is optimized for SSB transmit and receive, but can also be used for CW receive. The user can configure the mic gain and speech compression level using the menu.

KNB2 Noise Blanker: The KNB2 is effective on a wide range of noise sources, and includes two gain settings as well as two different blanking pulse widths. The noise blanker is controlled using two dedicated front-panel functions, **NB** and **LEVEL**.

KAT2 Automatic Antenna Tuner (ATU): The KAT2 is extremely compact--less than 1.5 x 1.5 x 4.5 inches (40 x 40 x 115 mm)--and fits into the top cover between the internal battery bracket and rear panel. It is intended to match unbalanced antennas, but an external balun can be used with balanced feedlines. The ATU includes an integral dual antenna switch, SWR bridge, and switchable L-network to handle a wide range of impedances. The **ATU** menu entry can be used to display a variety of antenna match parameters, forward and reflected power, and SWR. All ATU relays are of the latching type, resulting in nearly zero current drain except when an antenna is being tuned. **Note:** This is a low-power (20 W nominal) ATU, and cannot be used with the KPA100 amplifier.

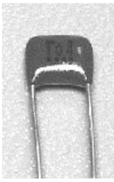
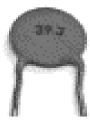
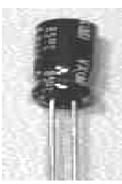
K160RX 160 m/RX ANT Switch: The K160RX option includes all components necessary to put the K2 on 160 meters (1.8-2.0 MHz), along with a receive antenna switch than can be used on any band. The receive antenna switch is included with the 160 m module because 160 m operators frequently use a low-noise receiving antenna such as a low-height long wire. With the K160RX option installed, the K2 can also receive signals in the upper end of the AM broadcast band.

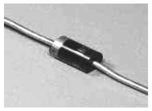
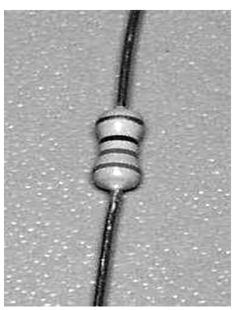
KBT2 Internal 12-V Battery: The internal battery is a 12-V, 2.9-Ah gel cell that fits snugly into the top cover. The internal battery can be installed even if the ATU and/or host adapter is present. Recharging requires an external 13.8-14.2 V regulated power supply, which can also power the transceiver. The internal battery kit includes a rugged, custom-designed battery bracket; gold-plated connectors; reverse-polarity protection diode; and a heavy-duty 10-A disable switch that is accessible from the rear panel.

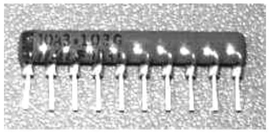
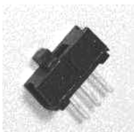
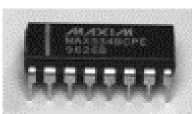
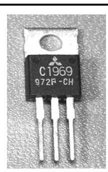
**** KIO2 Host Interface and Aux. I/O:** The host interface adapter allows computer control of the K2, and also provides some useful auxiliary signals such as 8 V on transmit. The KIO2 fits into the top cover, and can be installed even if both the battery and ATU are present. A DB9 connector is used to receive commands from a compatible computer or terminal.

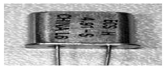
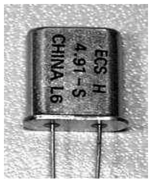
**** KPA100 Power Amp (PA):** This module converts the K2 into a medium-power transceiver, providing up to 100 W PEP/CW output. The kit comes with its own top cover/heat sink that replaces the K2's original top cover. If you have the internal battery or low-power internal antenna tuner, you can leave these installed in the original cover. The amplifier can then be easily removed, and the battery/tuner put back in, for low-power field operation.

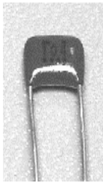
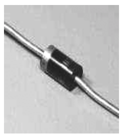
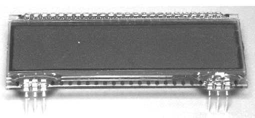
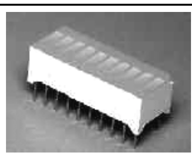
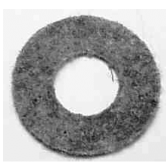
**** KAF2 Audio Filter:** This module attaches to the back of the Control board. It provides low-pass and band-pass functions, using low-noise analog circuitry. The KAF2 is controlled by the **AFIL** button.

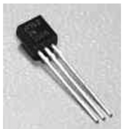
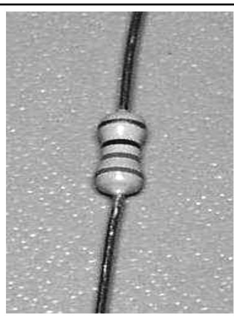
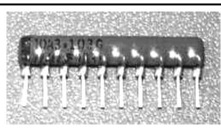
Appendix A	K2 Control Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	C2, C12, C20, C34	.001	Monolithic Cap, "102"	4
	C24, C36	.0027	Monolithic Cap, "272"	2
	C10, C11 C17, C18, C23, C3, C35, C37, C39, C40, C41, C42, C5, C9	.01	Monolithic Cap, "103"	14
	C27	.022	Monolithic Cap, "223"	1
	C6, C14, C16, C19, C30, C31	.047	Monolithic Cap, "473"	6
	C25, C26	0.1	Monolithic Cap, "104"	2
	C4	0.47uF	Monolithic Cap, "474"	1
	C21	33	NPO disc cap, "33"	1
	C8	39	NPO disc cap, "39"	1
	C7	330	NPO disc cap, "331"	1
	C38	680	NPO disc cap, "681"	1
	C1, C33	2.2µF	Electrolytic cap	2
	C13, C32	22µF	Electrolytic cap	2
	C15	100µF	Electrolytic cap	1
	C28, C29	220µF	Electrolytic cap	2
	C22	var,8-50pF	Ceramic trim cap (Green paint on screw with RED Marking on side; or no markings at all.)	1

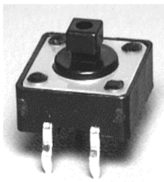
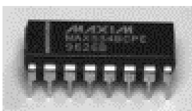
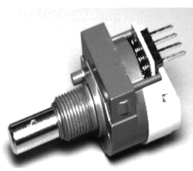
Appendix A	K2 Control Board Parts List			
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	D1, D2	1N4148	Silicon switching diode, small glass body	2
	D3	1N5817	Shottky diode, black body	1
	MISC	40 pin socket	socket for MCU	1
	P1	6P male, RA	Right Angle 6 pin connector	1
	P2	18x2 male, RA	Right Angle 18 x 2 pin connector	1
	P3	10x2 male, RA	Right Angle 10 x 2 pin connector	1
	P4	5x2 male	5 x 2 pin connector	1
	P5, P6	2p male	Volt Meter, Freq. Counter Inputs	2
	Q1, Q2	2N3906	TO-92	2
	Q3, Q4, Q5	2N7000	TO-92	3
	Q6, Q7	J310	TO-92	2
	Q8, Q11, Q12	PN2222A	TO-92	3
	Q9,Q10	MPS5179	TO-92	2
	R8	100, 1%	(BLUE)	1
	R7	1.78k, 1%	(BLUE)	1
	R10	196K, 1%	(BLUE)	1
	R9	806K, 1%	(BLUE)	1
	R18, R19	0 ohm	Use short wire jumpers (see text)	2
	R20	2.7 ohm	(TAN)	1
	R16	10	(TAN)	1
	R6	470	(TAN)	1
	R4	5.6K	(TAN)	1
	R3, R21	10K	(TAN)	2
	R5	33K	(TAN)	1
	R1	51K	(TAN)	1
	R2, R17	3.3M	(TAN)	2

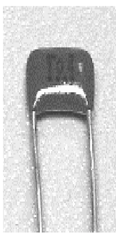
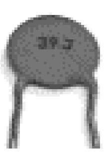
Appendix A	K2 Control Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	RP5	470,5R ISO "10A3-471G"	SIP resistor pack, 10 pins; ALT: "770103471"	1
	RP1	3.9K,5R ISO "770103392"	SIP resistor pack, 10 pins; ALT: "10A3392G"	1
	RP6	5.1K,5R ISO "770103512"	Sip resistor pack, 10 pins; ALT: "10A3512G"	1
	RP7	33K,4R ISO "8A3-333G"	SIP resistor pack, 8 pins; ALT: "77083333"	1
	RP3	47K,5R ISO "10A3-473G"	SIP resistor pack, 10 pins; ALT: 770103473"	1
	RP2, RP4	82K,4R ISO "77083823"	SIP resistor pack, 8 pins; ALT: "08A3823G"	2
	S1	SPDT	Slide Switch, selects int. 12V or voltage probe	1
	U1	SA602AN	AGC Mixer (SA612 Alt.), 8 pins	1
	U2	LM833N	Dual Op Amp, 8 pins	1
	U3	LMC6482AIN	Dual Op Amp, 8 pins	1
	U9	LM380N-8	Audio Amplifier, 8 pins	1
	U7	25LC320	EEPROM; 4K x 8, 8 pins	1
	U10	LMC660	Quad Op Amp, 14 pins	1
	U8	MAX534	Quad, 8-bit DAC, 16 pins	1
	U4	LM2930T-8	8 Volt regulator, TO-220 Pkg.	1
	U5	78M05 Alt: 7805, 7805T, L7805	5 Volt regulator, TO-220 Pkg.	1
	U6	PIC16C77-04/SP	MCU, Programmed, 40 pins	1

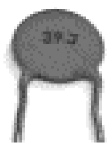
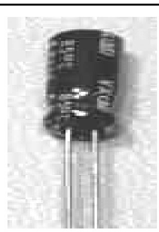
Appendix A	K2 Control Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	X1	5.068Mhz	Crystal, HC49 (may be standard or low-profile)	1
	X2	4.000MHz	Crystal, HC49 (standard)	1

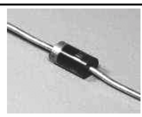
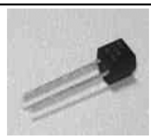
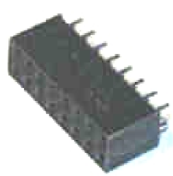
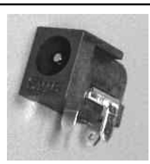
Appendix A	K2 Front Panel Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	C1, C3	.047	Monolithic, "473"	2
	C2, C9	.01	Monolithic, "103"	2
	D2, D3	LCD Backlight Assy	LED Backlights mounted in Diffuser	1
	D4, D5, D6	1N5817	(BLACK)	3
	DS1	VIM-838-DP	4-character, 7-Segment multiplexed LCD	1
	DS2	10LED array	Hi-eff. Green LED bargraph	1
	HW	Felt Washer, 1" OD	Mounts under main tuning knob	1
	HW	Spacer Set (made from PCB stock)	(4) 0.75" spacers for Backlight LEDs; (1) spacing tool for push button switches	1
	J1	20 pin x 1 female socket	FP to RF Board	1
	J2	8p male	Mic Jack; Male; PCB Mount, Round	1

Appendix A	K2 Front Panel Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	Misc	Keycap, rect, black	Black keycaps for Push Buttons (BLACK)	13
	Misc	Keycap, rect, gray	Band up/down keycap; S1, S3 (GRAY)	2
	Misc	Keycap, square, black	Rate / Lock Keycap; S7, (BLACK, Square)	1
	Q1, Q2	PN2222A	Plastic Body, TO-92	2
	R1, R2, R4, R5	5K potentiometer, linear taper	"B5K"; Keyer Speed, Power Out, I.F. Gain, RIT/XIT Offset	4
	R3	5K or 10K potentiometer, audio taper	"A5K" or "A10K"; Audio Gain Control	1
	R10	33	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R12	120	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R9	220	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R11	470	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R6, R7	4.7K	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	2
	R15	10K	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R16	15K	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	R14	100K	1/4W, 5% resistor. (TAN Color)	1
	RB1, RB2	Rubber bumper; .040 or .047 thick, x .312" square	For top corners of FP PCB	2
	RP2	120Ω SIP, "770101121"	SIP 10pin resistor pack; ALT: "10A1121G"	1
	RP1	100K SIP, "10A1-104G"	SIP 10pin resistor pack; ALT: "770101104"	1

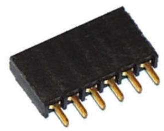
Appendix A	K2 Front Panel Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	S1, S2, S3, S4, S5, S6, S7, S8, S9, S10, S11, S12, S13, S14, S15, S16	switch, push button	Front Panel push button switches	16
	Misc	40 pin socket	for LCD driver chip, U1	1
	U1	PCF8566PN	LCD Driver chip, 40 pin	1
	U2	74HC165N	8-bit parallel-in, serial-out shift register, 16 pin	1
	U3, U4	TPIC6B595N Alt: 6B595KA	8-bit serial-in, parallel-out shift register, 20 pin	2
	Z1	Shaft Encoder	100-count incremental encoder w/straight pins; VFO main tuning control	1

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	C1, C2, C9, C17, C26, C27, C37, C38, C39, C49, C57, C64, C77, C79, C80, C81, C82, C89, C100, C140, C167, C195, C204, C207, C208, C216, C223	.001	Monolithic Cap, "102"	27
	C52, C53, C54, C55, C58, C61, C62, C63, C87, C95, C107, C108, C109, C110, C113, C114, C115, C118, C119, C120, C121, C129, C135, C141, C142, C143, C145, C146 C155, C158, C159, C160, C161, C163, C164, C165, C168, C172, C175, C181, C183, C184	.01	Monolithic Cap, "103"	42
	C92, C177	.022	Monolithic, "223"	2
	C90, C94, C117, C138, C156, C157, C162, C166, C170, C196	.047	Monolithic, "473"	10
	C59, C65, C67, C86, C124, C130, C131, C133, C139, C151, C176, C178, C185	0.1	Monolithic, "104"	13
	C45	2pf	NPO, "2"	1
	C22, C33	3.3pf (alternate: 3pF)	NPO, "3 || 3" or "3.3"	2
	C6, C70	4.7pf (alternate: 5 pF)	NPO, "4.7"	2
	C68, C180, C211	10	NPO, "10"	3
	C219	12	NPO, "12"	1
	C74	20	NPO, "20"	1
	C198	27	NPO, "27"	1
	C43, C47, C116, C213	33	NPO, "33"	4

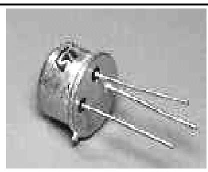
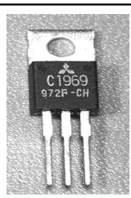
Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	C221	39	NPO, "39"	1
	C20, C24, C73, C203	47	NPO, "47"	4
	C31, C35, C122	56	NPO, "56"	3
	C153, C104, C214	68	NPO, "68"	3
	C71, ,C174, C210	82	NPO, "82"	3
	C197, C222, C144, C5, C7	100	NPO, "101"	5
	C84, C85, C202	120	NPO, "121"	3
	C200, C212, C218	150	NPO, "151"; markings on rear side: '#21 ASD'	3
	C182	180	NPO, "181"	1
	C42, C48, C173, C199, C201, C220	220	NPO, "221"	6
	C72, C154	270	NPO, "271"	2
	C19,C25,C30,C36,C150	330	NPO, "331"	5
	C169	390	NPO, "391"	1
	C225, C227	470	NPO, "471"	2
	C12, C15	560	NPO, "561"	2
	C127, C128	680	NPO, "681"	2
	C4, C8, C226	820	NPO, "821" (Do not confuse with 150pf)	3
	C190, C192	1200	NPO, "122"	2
	C11, C16, C191	1800	NPO, "182"	3
	C76	**not used**	**reserved for future VCO use**	**0**
	C96	1uF	Monolithic Cap (Thick) "105"	1
	C105, C106, C111	2.2uF	Electrolytic	3
	C93	10uF	Electrolytic	1
	C125	22uF	Electrolytic	1
	C126	47uF	Electrolytic	1
	C60, C137	100uF	Electrolytic	2
	C103	220uF	Electrolytic	1

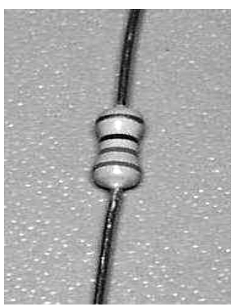
Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	C44, C46, C32, C34	var,5-30pF	ceramic trimmer (see below to tell from 50 pF)	4
	C21, C23	var,8-50pF	ceramic trimmer (red mark or bagged separately)	2
	D9	1N5711	glass body	1
	D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6, D7, D36	1N4007	PIN switching diode (BLACK)	8
	D11, D13, D18	1N4148	glass body	3
	D10, D12	SB530 (alternate: 1N5821)	low-drop shottky diode, 5A, Large (BLACK)	2
	D16, D23, D24, D25, D26, D39	MV209	TO-92, 2 leads	6
	D17, D21, D22, D29, D30, D31, D32, D33, D34, D37, D38	1SV149	TO-92, 2 leads	11
	F1	RGE300	Resettable fuse; (YELLOW) "G300" Looks like a larger monolithic cap.	1
	J8	10x2,female socket	10 x 2 female socket	1
	J7	18x2,female socket	18 x 2 female socket	1
	J3	2.1mm jack	2.1 mm DC barrel connector	1

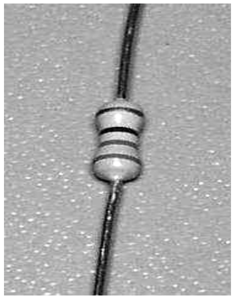
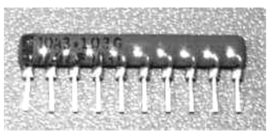
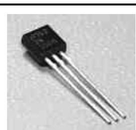
Appendix A | **K2 RF Board Parts List**

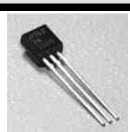
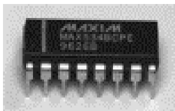
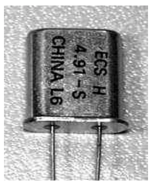
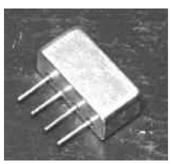
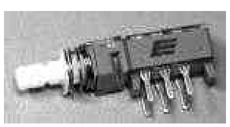
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	J6	6p,female socket	6 x 1 female socket	1
	J4	BNC	Antenna connector	1
	J1	SJ-373	Keyer Jack, Threaded, Stereo, Vertical orientation	1
	J2	Stereo+iso sw.	Headphone jack. Horizontal Orientation	1
	L10, L11, L12, L13	Variable Ind, 1µh "T1050"	**TOKO**, 15/17m BPF, 10/12m BPF. Small adjustment slot	4
	L30, L1, L2, L3, L4, L8, L9, L34	Variable Ind, 4.7µH "T1005"	**TOKO**, VCO, IF, 40m BPF, 80/160m BPF, 20/30m BPF. Large adjustment slot	8

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	L31	10µH , Shielded	solenoidal, shielded, DELEVAN (BLACK)	1
	L33	T44-8	Toroid (YELLOW/RED), 39 µH, see text (BFO)	1
	L21, L22, L23, L24	T44-10	Toroid (BLACK); 12/10m LPF(.32µH, .26µH); 17/15mLPF(.45µH)	4
	L16, L17, L18, L19, L20, L25, L26	T44-2	Toroid (RED); 80m LPF(2.50µH); 20/30m LPF(.58µH, .44µH, .37µH); 1.36µH, 40M LPF	7
	L5	33µH	Soleniodal (GREEN)	1
	RFC6	0.68µH	Solenoidal (GREEN)	1
	RFC1, RFC2, RFC11, RFC12, RFC13,	100µH	Solenoidal (GREEN)	5
	RFC4, RFC5, RFC8, RFC9	10µH	Solenoidal (GREEN)	4
	RFC7	15µH	Solenoidal (GREEN)	1
	RFC10	1mH	Solenoidal (GREEN)	1
	RFC14	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 18µH, 10T	1
	RFC16	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 47µH, 16T	1
	RFC3	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 47µH, 16T, T-R Input Choke	1
	T1	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 9:3, Pre-Driver to Driver	1
	T2	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 12:8, Driver to PA	1
	T6	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 10T bifilar, RF preamp	1
	T7	FT37-43	Toroid (GRAY), 5:20, Xfil to IF amp	1
	T3	FT50-43	Toroid (GRAY, larger), 5T bifilar, PA Collector Feed	1
	T5	T50-6	Toroid (YELLOW), 1.3µH, 16:4, 90% of core for primary, VCO	1

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	T4	Binocular core	2:3:1:1, Balun Core; Square, Two Holes	1
	Z1, Z2	Ferrite Bead	2 (GRAY) ferrite beads ea. on bare wire (see text)	4
	P1	20 x 1 ,male, RA	20 pin male, right angle. To Front Panel, J1	1
	P5	2p,male	2 pin male. For Speaker; Locking Ramp	1
	Q5, Q21, Q22	2N5109	Pre-Amp, Post Amp, Pre-Driver	3
	Q7, Q8	2SC1969	Push-Pull Finals	2
	Q6	2SC2166	Driver	1

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	Q10, Q12, Q17, Q20, Q23	2N7000	TO-92	5
	Q18, Q19, Q24	J310	TO-92	3
	Q11, Q13, Q16	PN2222A	TO-92	3
	Q2	ZVN4424A	Slightly Thinner TO-92 Style	1
	R60	100, POT - Trimmer	PA Bias Adjustment	1
	R115	0.05 ohm	1%, 3W Current Sense, (BLACK)	1
	R68	226	1%, 1/4W (BLUE)	1
	R67	1.5k	1%, 1/4W (BLUE)	1
	R50	1.5 ohm, 1/2 watt	(TAN)	1
	R42, R53, R54, R83	4.7 ohm	(TAN)	4
	R76	10	(TAN)	1
	R82, R84	18	(TAN)	2
	R43, R78, R112	22	(TAN)	3
	R15, R55, R56, R92, R97	33	(TAN)	5
	R45, R47, R74	47	(TAN)	3
	R7	68	(TAN)	1
	R35, R36, R94, R113	82	(TAN)	4
	R6, R8, R89	100	(TAN)	3
	R30, R48, R49, R61	120	(TAN)	4
	R85	150	(TAN)	1
	R58	180 ohm, 1/2 watt	(TAN)	1
	R1, R2, R63, R77	220	(TAN)	4
	R20, R46, R98, R99	270	(TAN)	4
	R40, R64, R72, R88, R90	470	(TAN)	5
	R11, R12, R41	560	(TAN)	3
	R75, R80	680	(TAN)	2

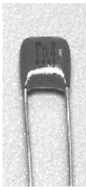
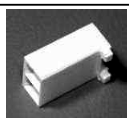
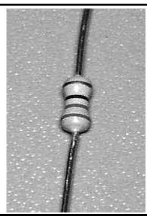
Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	R91, R93, R100	820	(TAN)	3
	R10, R38, R39	1K	(TAN)	3
	R79, R81	1.8K	(TAN)	2
	R5, R24, R25, R34, R44, R62, R66, R73, R95, R96	2.7K	(TAN)	10
	R59	4.7K	(TAN)	1
	R111	5.6K	(TAN)	1
	R13, R14, R16, R31, R32, R65, R101	10K	(TAN)	7
	R33	15K	(TAN)	1
	R28	27K	(TAN)	1
	R9, R17, R21, R37, R69, R107	100K	(TAN)	6
	R18	1M	(TAN)	1
	R22	3.3M	(TAN)	1
	RP4,RP5	100K,3R ISO; "6A3-104G"	SIP; resistor pack, 6 pins; ALT: "77063104"	2
	RP6	100K,4R ISO; "8A3-104G"	SIP; resistor pack, 8 pins; ALT: "77083104" or "B104G"	1
	RP2, RP3	10K,4R ISO; "8A3-103G"	SIP; resistor pack, 8 pins; ALT: "77083103"	2
	TP1, TP2, TP3	test point, female	VFO, BFO, PLL REF test points	3
	U1	16C72 Alt: 16C72A	Relay Driver PIC; I/O Controller; OTP programmed	1
	U2	78L06AWC	TO-92, 6v Reg. For relays	1
	U3, U9	LT1252	8 pin DIP, VFO Buffer; TX Buffer	2
	U5	LTC1451	8 pin DIP, 12-Bit DAC for Reference Freq. Of PLL	1
	U6	LMC662	8 pin DIP, (rail-to-rail out); PLL Loop filter	1
	U10, U11	SA602AN	8 pin DIP, TX Mixer; Prod. Detector	2
	U12	MC1350P	8 pin DIP, IF Amp / AGC	1

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	U8	78L05	5-volt reg. (100mA)	1
	U4	MC145170P2 (or P1)	16 pin DIP, PLL	1
	W1, W2, W3, W5, W6	1" bare wire	Use Component Leads	0
	X1, X2	12.096MHz	ECS	2
	X3, X4	4.9152MHz Crystal "4.91 - S"	BFO Xtals; Series mode, matched, HC49	2
	X5, X6, X7, X8, X9, X10, X11	4.9152MHz Crystal; "4.91-20"; ALT: "4.91-0195"	Filter Xtals; Parallel mode, matched, HC-49	7
	Z5	4.000MHz Resonator	Ceramic resonator w/caps	1
	Z6	TUF-1	Balanced diode mixer	1
	S1	DPDT	Power Switch	1

Appendix A	K2 RF Board Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	MISC	Keycap; TAC-BLK	Power Switch Keycap; rectangular	1
	MISC	28 pin socket, 0.3" DIP	Socket for U1	1
	HW	heatsink TO5 Flush	Crown heatsink; for Q22	1
	HW	standoff, 0.125"H x 1/4" D, phenolic; RAF #1122-4-PH (COLOR: BROWN)	For PA Transistor Mounting	2
	HW	stem bumper, 0.5" dia., black rubber	For L33 (BFO)	1
	HW	#4, washer, nylon	Washer, nylon, 0.5" diameter (For T5)	1
	HW	#4-32, nut, nylon	nut, nylon (For T5)	1
	HW	4-32,screw, nylon x 1/2"	screw, pan head, nylon (For T5)	1

Appendix A	K2 Misc. Bag Parts List			
PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	HW	#4 int. tooth lockwasher		41
	HW	2-56,screw , 1/8", STAINLESS	fillister head, **STAINLESS** 2-56 x 1/8”,slotted, for LCD bezel	4
	HW	2-D Fastener	Chassis fasteners	11
	HW	4-40 nut, Steel-ZN		18
	HW	4-40 screw, 3/8”, black	pan-head Phillips screw, black oxide steel (incl. spares)	11
	HW	4-40 screw, 3/16", black	pan-head Phillips screw, black oxide steel (incl. spares)	56
	HW	4-40 screw, 82 deg. Flt Hd, black	3/16”, flathead Phillips, 82 deg, 0.21 dia head, black oxide steel (front panel)	1
	HW	4-40 screw 1/2", black	Phillips, for mounting PA transistors	2
	HW	4-40 screw 7/16", steel-ZN	Phillips, for mounting feet and tilt stand	6
	HW	4-40 standoff 1/4" long x 3/16"	Threaded	5
	HW	4-40 standoff, 1/2" x 1/4" Dia.	Threaded hex 0.5" x 0.25" dia.	2
	HW	Shoulder washer, nylon, black	For PA transistors	2
	HW	Tie wrap - Small	For speaker wiring	3
	HW	Tilt stand set with 4 feet	Two oval front feet, tilt stand, two rear feet	1
	HW	#4 washer, fibre, black	For speaker mounting, PA transistor mounting	6
	**SPK**-J2	1/8” phone jack, mono w/switch	Panel-mount jack for ext. speaker	1

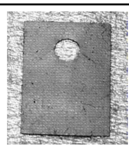
Appendix A	K2 Misc. Bag Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	**SPK**-J1	2 pin female conn. Housing	0.1” spacing w/locking ramp, int. speaker plug	1
	**ACC**-P1	2.1mm male conn.	Mates with DC power jack	1
	**ACC**-P2	stereo 1/8” phone plug	Plug for hand key/keyer/paddle/computer input	1
	Misc	female crimp pins	Used with int. speaker female housing (SPK-J1)	2
	Misc	plastic tuning tool, p/n MARS-12	For aligning slug-tuned inductors (GREEN)	1
	Misc	Allen wrench	Long-handled, for large knobs and for Control board removal	1
	Misc	Allen wrench	Short-handled, for small knobs	1

Appendix A	K2 Freq, Voltage and RF Probe Assy Parts List			
PICTURE	**Designators**	**Value**	**Description**	**QTY**
	FCP-C1	10pf cap	Axial Leads (like a resistor), for freq. counter probe	1
	**RFP**-C1	.01 µF cap	Monolithic capacitor, for optional RF probe	1
	RFP-D1	1N34A germanium diode	For optional RF probe	1
	FCP-E1	1 pin male probe tip	For freq. counter probe	1
	**FCP**-J1, **VMP**-J1	2 pin female housing	For freq. counter probe, optional voltmeter probe	2
	Misc	female crimp pins		3
	**RFP**-R1	4.7M Resistor	For optional RF probe	1

K2 Wire Bag Parts List

PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	Misc	#28 Red Enamel Wire, 3 ft.	For L33 (BFO); bagged separately	3
	Misc	#26 Red Enamel Wire, 30 ft.	For toroids	30
	Misc	#26 Green Enamel Wire, 8 ft.	For toroids	8
	Misc	#22 Dual-conductor wire, 2 ft.	For speaker and ext. speaker jack	2
	Misc	Heat Shrink; 3/16" x 4"	For freq. counter probe.	0.33
	Misc	RG174 Coax Cable, 1 ft.	For freq. counter probe.	1
	Misc	Green Hookup Wire, #24, 3 ft.	Insulated wire for T4, misc. wiring	3
	Misc	White Hookup Wire, #24, 1 ft.	Insulated wire for T4, misc. wiring	1

Appendix A K2 Packing Box Parts List

PICTURE	Designators	Value	Description	QTY
	PCB1	Control	Printed Circuit Board, Control	1
	PCB2	front panel	Printed Circuit Board, Front Panel	1
	PCB3	RF	Printed Circuit Board, RF	1
	B1	left side	Chassis piece, painted	1
	B2	right side	Chassis piece, painted	1
	B3	front panel	Chassis piece, painted/silk-screened	1
	B4	rear panel / heatsink	Chassis piece, painted/silk-screened	1
	B5	top cover	Chassis piece, painted/silk-screened	1
	B6	bottom cover	Chassis piece, painted	1
	Bag, Wire Pack		Wire, coax, heatshrink tubing	1
	Bag, Front Panel Parts		Front Panel board parts	1
	Bag, RF Parts		RF board parts	1
	Bag, Control Parts		Control board parts	1
	Bag, Misc. Parts		Hardware and Misc. parts	1
	K1, K2, K3, K4, K5, K6, K7, K8, K9, K10, K11, K12, K13, K14, K15, K16, K17	Latching Relay, 5V	In plastic tube; 10-pin DIP	17
	Manual	K2 Manual		1
	HW (Inside back of manual)	Thermal insulator, TO220	Adhesive Thermal Insulators for Q6, Q7, Q8 (RF BOARD)	3
	Misc (Inside back of manual)	Green filter w/ adhesive	1.15” x 0.95” with adhesive strips. (FRONT PANEL)	1
	Misc (Inside back of manual)	Acrylic display bezel	Covers LCD and LED bargraph (FRONT PANEL)	1
	S/N (Inside back of manual)	Serial Number Label		1
	SP1	Speaker	4-ohm, 3-watt, high-sensitivity speaker	1

	KN1	Knob, 1.6" diam	Main Tuning Knob, weighted, 6mm shaft	1
	KN2, KN3, KN4, KN5, KN6	Knob, 0.5" diam	Small Control Knobs, 6mm shaft	5
	Docs	Alert Sheet		1
	Docs	Errata sheet		1
	Docs	Packing List		1
	Docs	Cover Letter		1

Relay Table

Band	BPF (SET Relays)	LPF (SET Relays)	VCO (SET Relays)
160m	K2	160m-K1	-
80m	K2, K3	K8	K13
40m	K1	K12	K13, K14
30m	K3, K4	K9	K14, K15
20m	K4	K9	K13, K14, K15
17m	K5	K11	K13, K15
15m	K5, K6	K11	K15
12m	K6, K7	K10	K13, K14, K15
10m	K7	K10	K13, K15

NOTE: All relays are single-coil latching type and are shown in the RESET position in schematics. Relay pins 5 and 6 are not connected internally.

VCO Table

Band	Fixed Cap., pF	Total Cap., pF*	VCO Freq. at band edge**
160m	C75 (470)	525-629	6715 (subtract)
80m	C72 (270)	325-429	8415 (subtract)
40m	C70+C71+C73 (134)	169-198	11915 (subtract)
30m	C73+C74 (67)	102-131	14915 (subtract)
20m	C74 (20)	55-84	18915 (subtract)
17m	none (0)	35-64	22915 (subtract)
15m	C73 (47)	82-111	16085 (add)
12m	C74 (20)	55-84	19975 (add)
10m	none (0)	35-64	23085 (add)

* This includes capacitance of varactor diodes D23-D26 on all bands, D21 and D22 on 80 and 160 meters, and stray capacitance. Only a portion of the indicated capacitance range is actually used to cover each Amateur band segment. VCO frequency can be calculated based on a total inductance of 0.95 μH (T5 in parallel with L30).

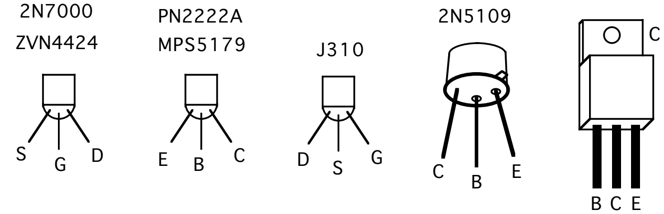
** Based on an I.F. of 4915 kHz (e.g., 6715 - 4915 = 1800).

Diodes

1Nxxxx   MV209, 1SV149

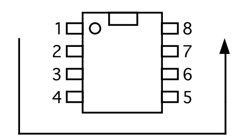
Transistors

2N7000, ZVN4424   2N3906, PN2222A, MPS5179   J310   2N5109   2SC2166, 2SC1969



Integrated Circuits

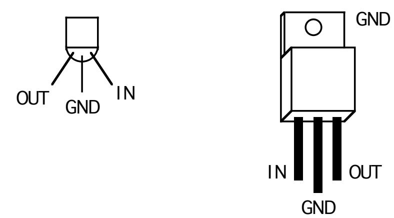
PLASTIC DIP
(DUAL-INLINE PACKAGE)



COUNT PINS STARTING AT PIN 1 AND GOING COUNTER-CLOCKWISE (8-PIN DIP SHOWN)

VOLTAGE REGULATORS

78L05, -06   2930T-8, 78XX



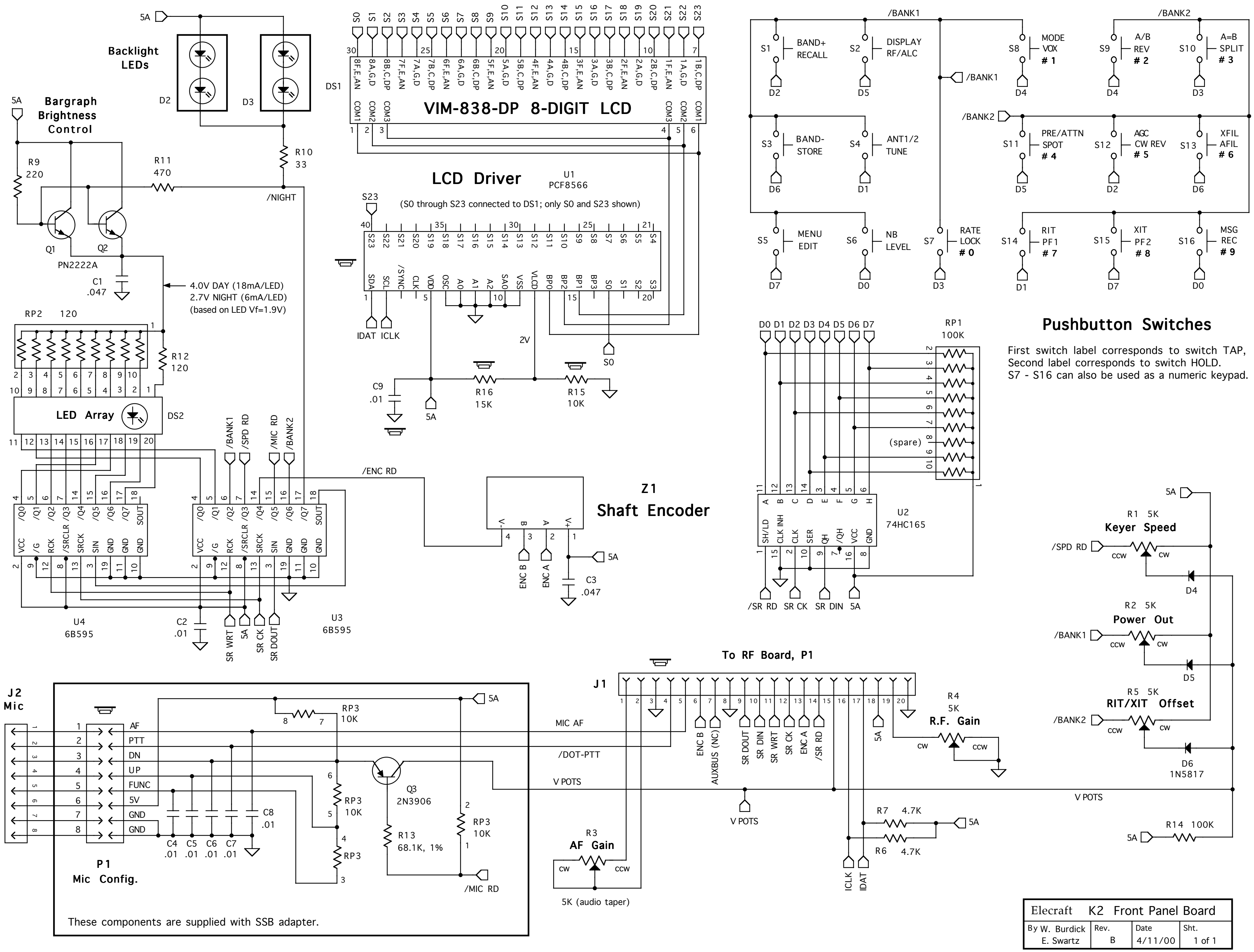
Special Symbols

 = On bottom of PC board.

 Jumper

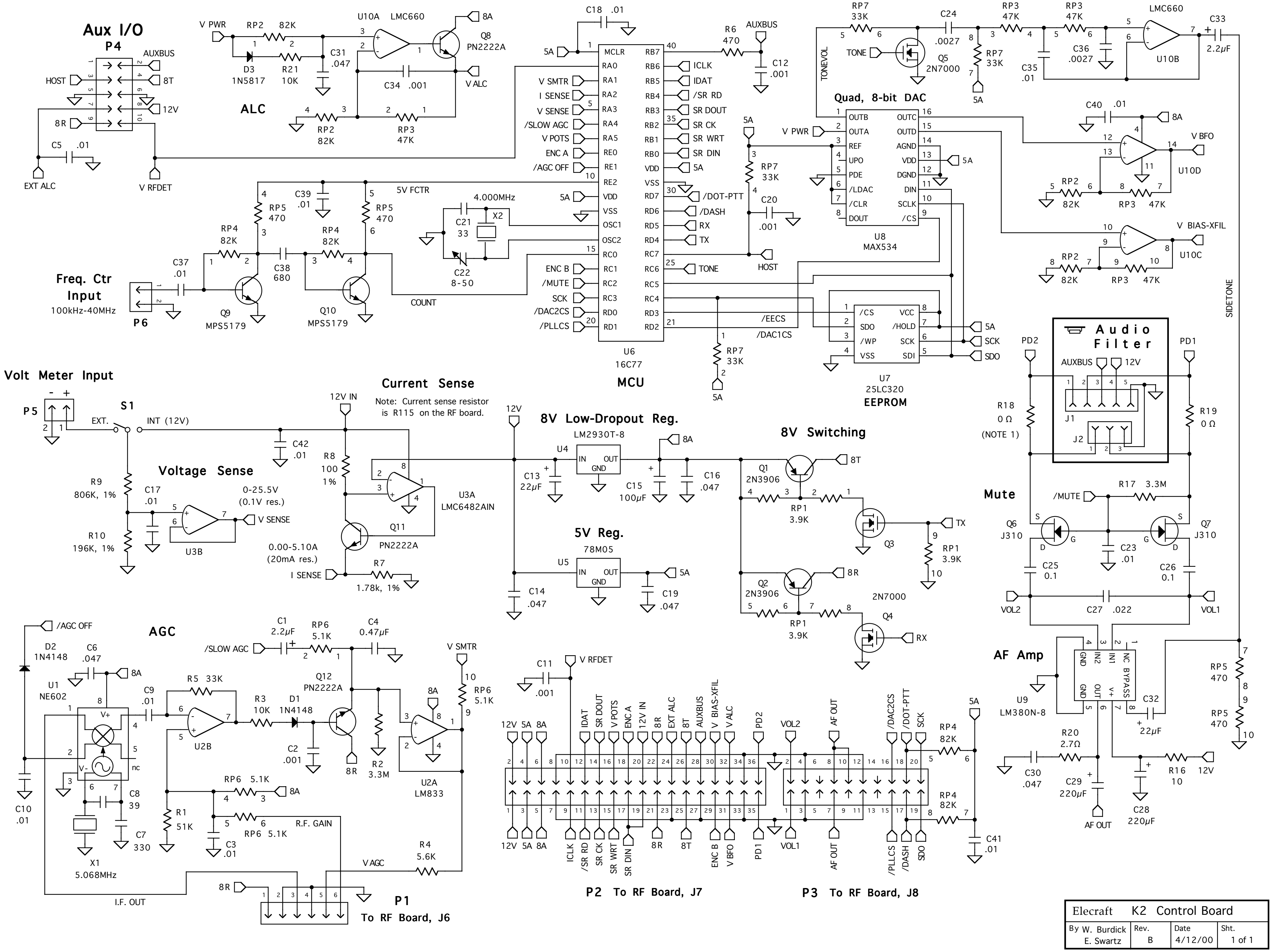
Elecraft	K2 Schematic Key		
By W. Burdick, E.Swartz	Rev. B	Date 4/20/00	Sht. 1 of 1

Appendix B



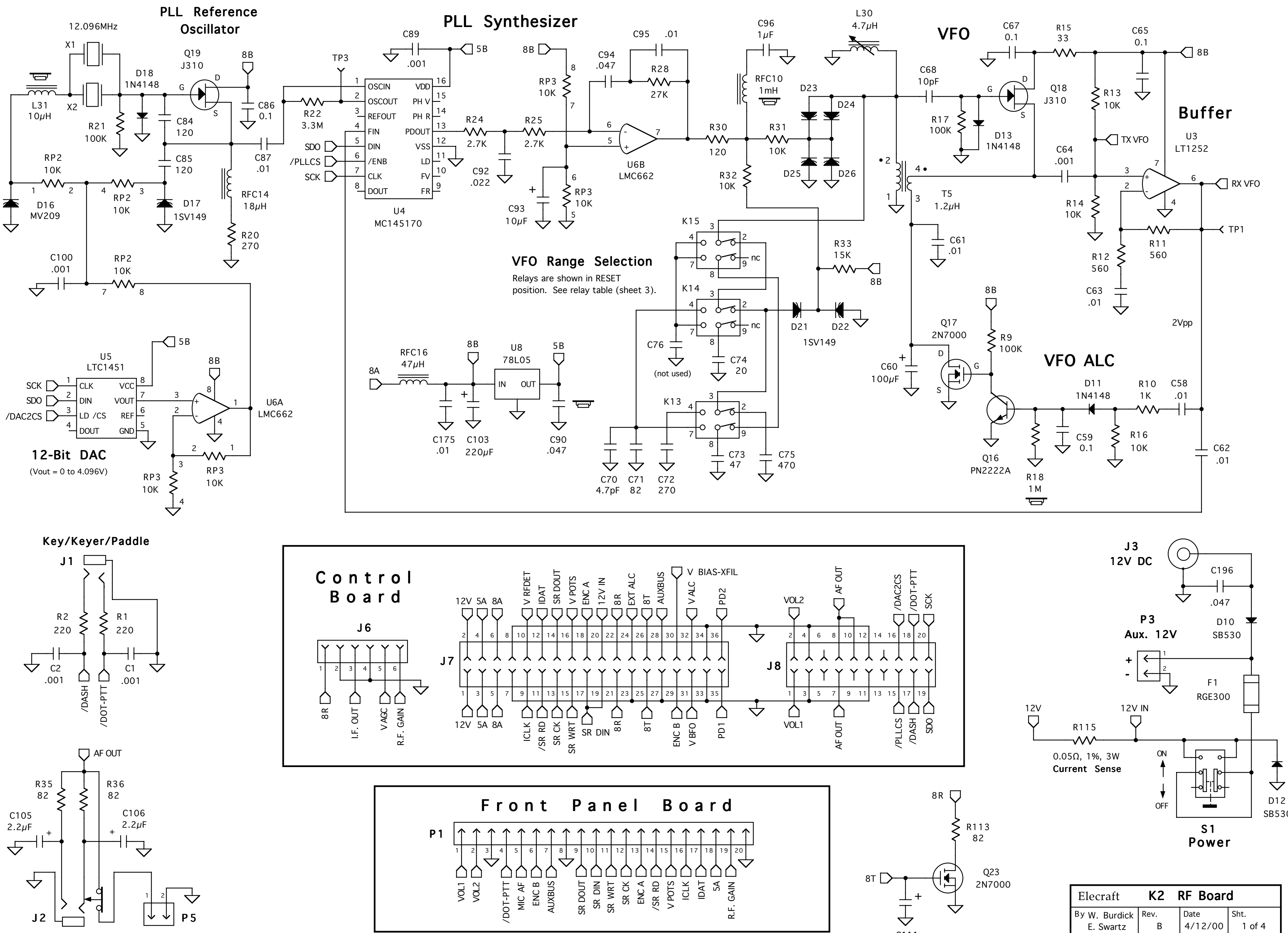
Backlight LEDs
Bargraph Brightness Control
VIM-838-DP 8-DIGIT LCD
LCD Driver
U1 PCF8566
(S0 through S23 connected to DS1; only S0 and S23 shown)
Pushbutton Switches
First switch label corresponds to switch TAP,
Second label corresponds to switch HOLD.
S7 - S16 can also be used as a numeric keypad.
BAND+ RECALL
DISPLAY RF/ALC
MODE VOX # 1
A/B REV # 2
A=B SPLIT # 3
BAND- STORE
ANT1/2 TUNE
PRE/ATTN SPOT # 4
AGC CW REV # 5
XFIL AFIL # 6
MENU EDIT
NB LEVEL
RATE LOCK # 0
RIT PF1 # 7
XIT PF2 # 8
MSG REC # 9
4.0V DAY (18mA/LED)
2.7V NIGHT (6mA/LED)
(based on LED Vf=1.9V)
LED Array
U4 6B595
U3 6B595
U2 74HC165
Z1 Shaft Encoder
Keyer Speed
Power Out
RIT/XIT Offset
R.F. Gain
AF Gain
5K (audio taper)
To RF Board, P1
J2 Mic
P1 Mic Config.
These components are supplied with SSB adapter.
Q3 2N3906
R13 68.1K, 1%
Elecraft K2 Front Panel Board
By W. Burdick E. Swartz
Rev. B
Date 4/11/00
Sht. 1 of 1

Appendix B

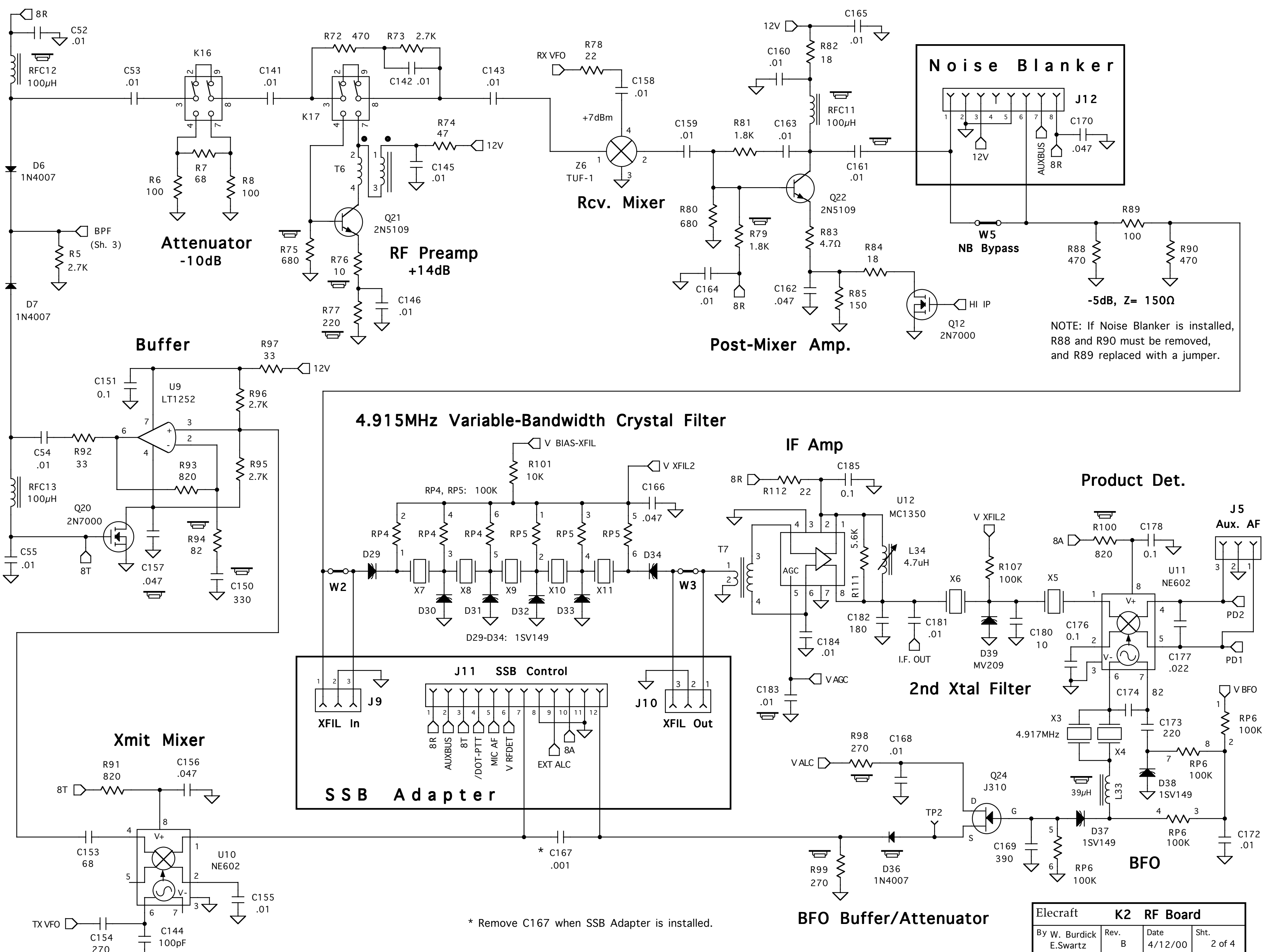


NOTE 1: R18 and R19 are 0 ohms (jumpers) in this version of the K2.
The jumpers must be removed if the Audio Filter option is installed.

Appendix B

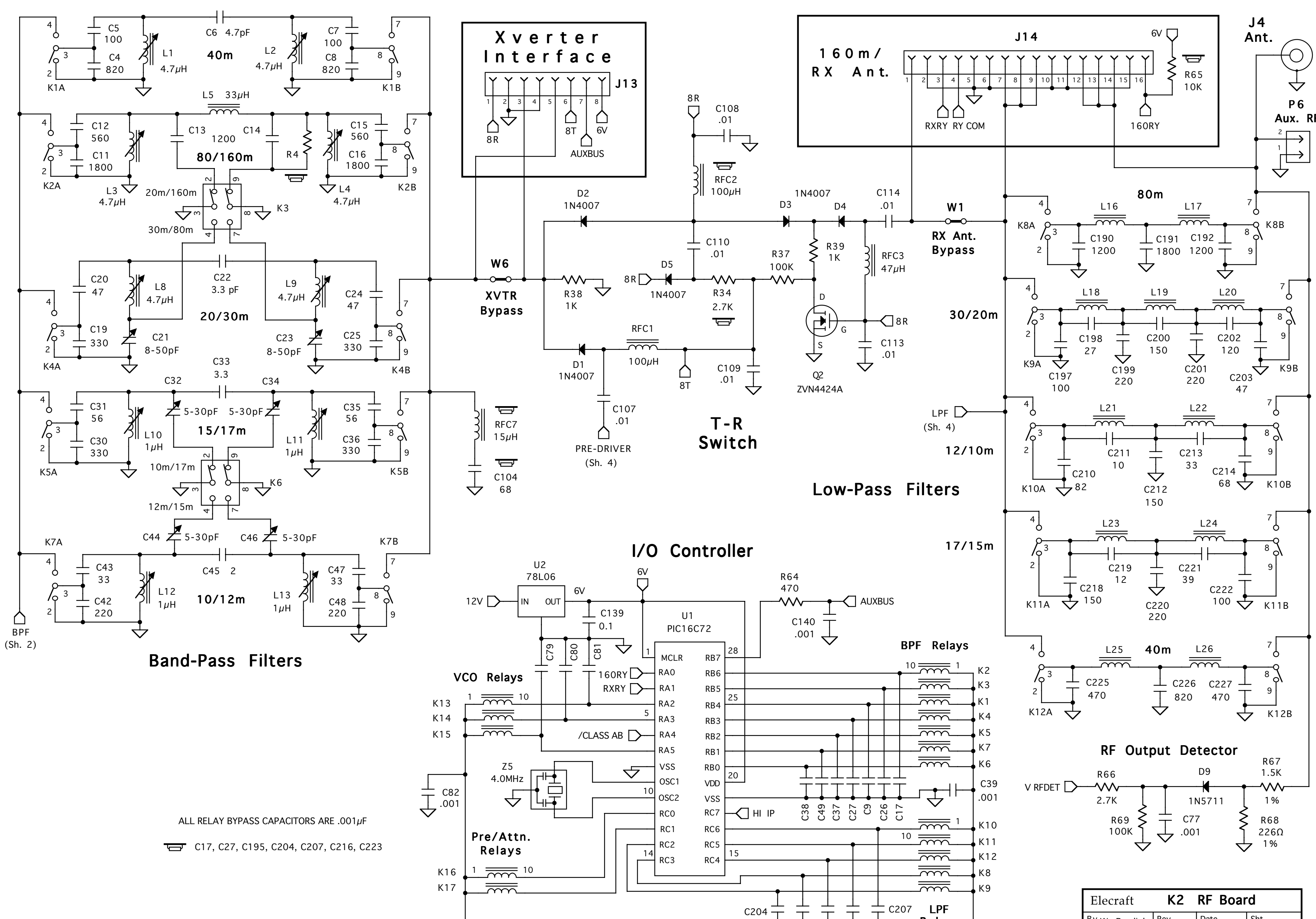

PLL Reference Oscillator
12.096MHz
PLL Synthesizer
VFO
Buffer
VFO Range Selection
Relays are shown in RESET position. See relay table (sheet 3).
VFO ALC
12-Bit DAC
(Vout = 0 to 4.096V)
Key/Keyer/Paddle
Control Board
Front Panel Board
J3 12V DC
P3 Aux. 12V
S1 Power
0.05Ω, 1%, 3W
Current Sense
Phones
Speaker
Elecraft
K2 RF Board
By W. Burdick E. Swartz
Rev. B
Date 4/12/00
Sht. 1 of 4

Appendix B



Noise Blanker
J12
NB Bypass
NOTE: If Noise Blanker is installed, R88 and R90 must be removed, and R89 replaced with a jumper.
-5dB, Z= 150Ω
Attenuator
-10dB
RF Preamp
+14dB
Rcv. Mixer
Post-Mixer Amp.
Buffer
4.915MHz Variable-Bandwidth Crystal Filter
RP4, RP5: 100K
D29-D34: 1SV149
IF Amp
Product Det.
2nd Xtal Filter
J11 SSB Control
XFIL In
XFIL Out
SSB Adapter
Xmit Mixer
* Remove C167 when SSB Adapter is installed.
BFO Buffer/Attenuator
BFO
Elecraft
K2 RF Board
By W. Burdick E.Swartz
Rev. B
Date 4/12/00
Sht. 2 of 4

Appendix B



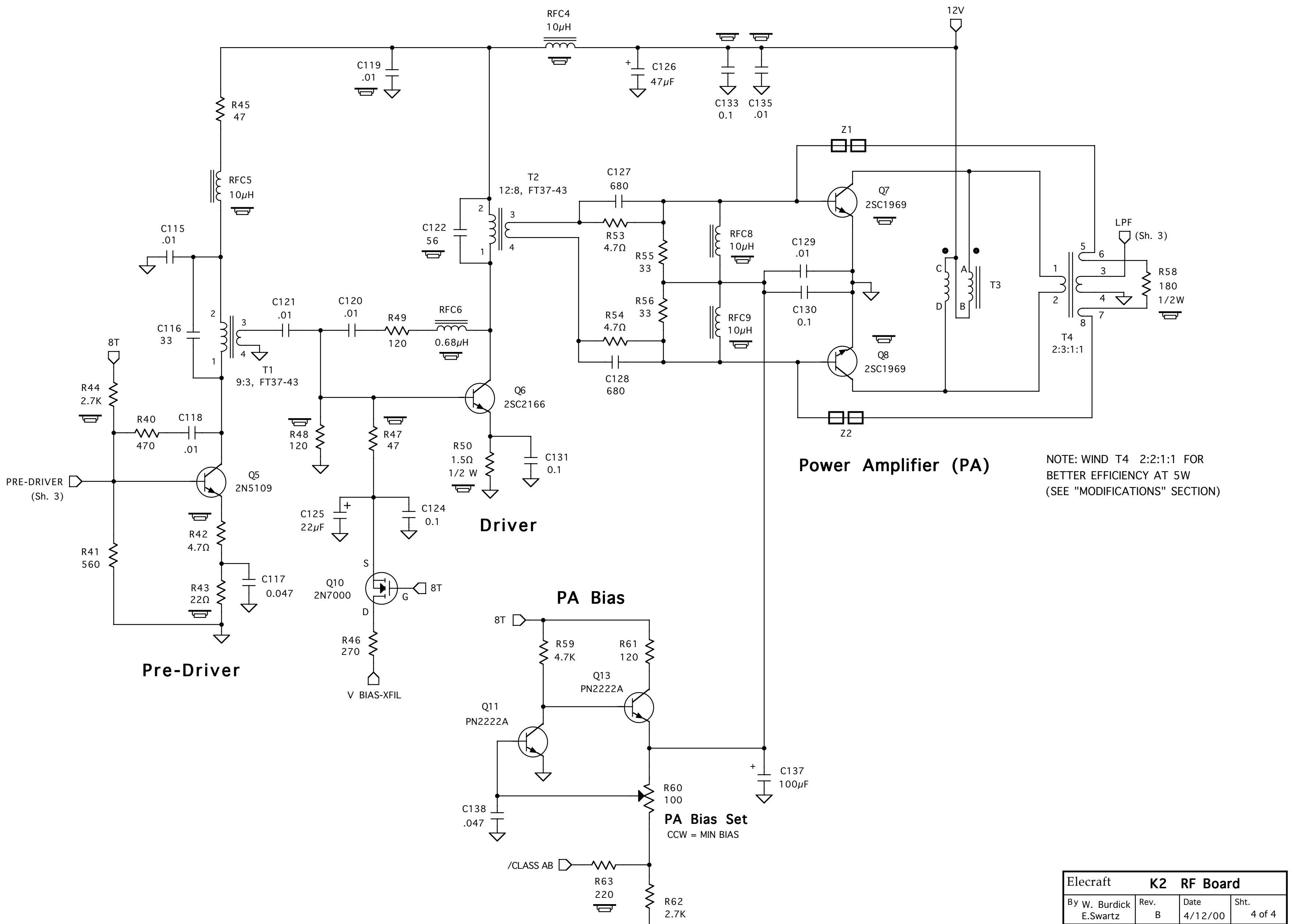
ALL RELAY BYPASS CAPACITORS ARE .001µF

C17, C27, C195, C204, C207, C216, C223

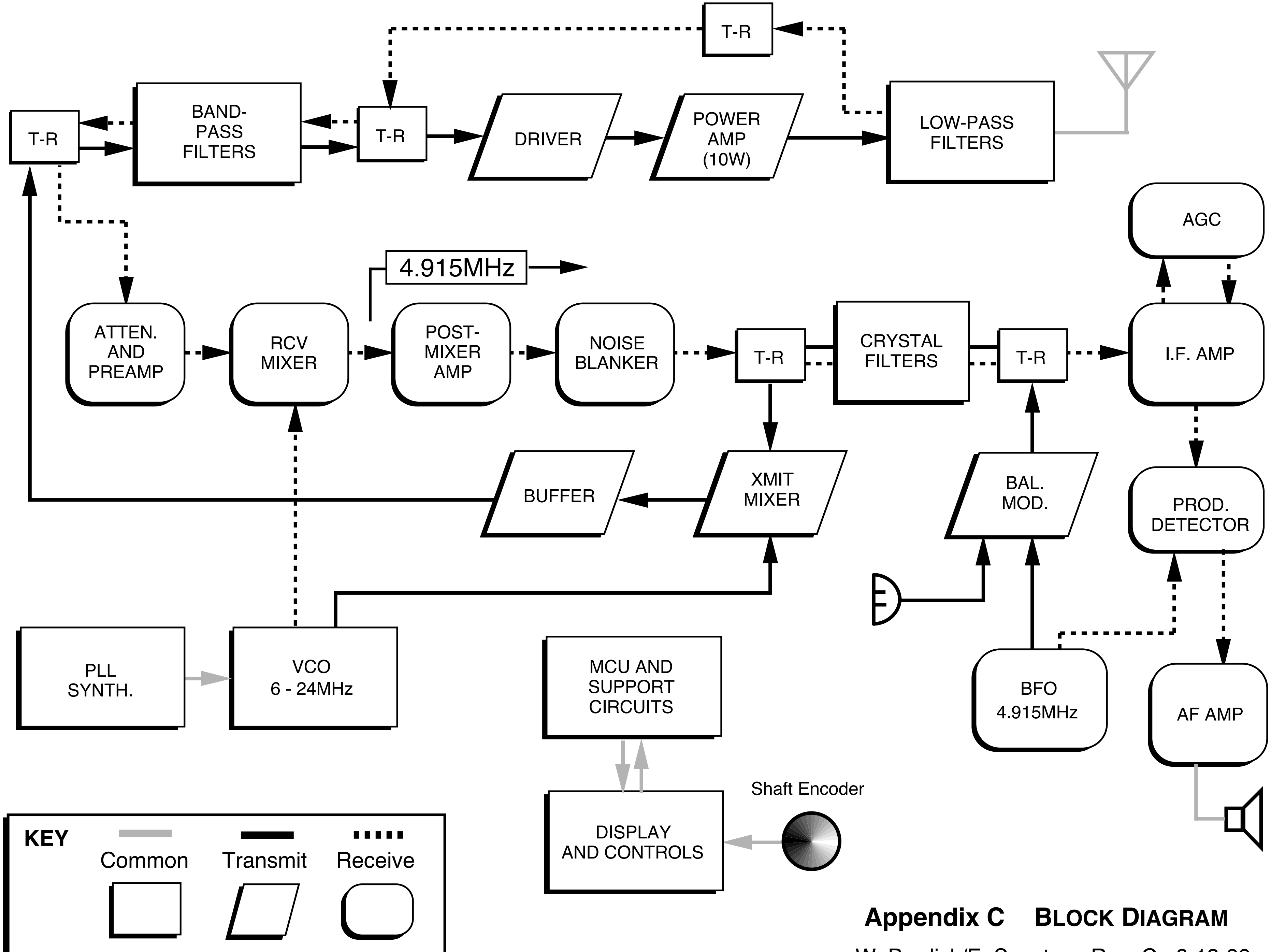
NOTE: Pins 5 and 6 of relays are not connected internally.
However, these pins may be connected to other relay pins
or to other components on either side of the PC board.

Elecraft	K2 RF Board		
By W. Burdick E. Swartz	Rev. B	Date 4/12/00	Sht. 3 of 4

Appendix B


12V
RFC4
10µH
C119
.01
C126
47µF
C133
0.1
C135
.01
R45
47
RFC5
10µH
C115
.01
C116
33
T1
9:3, FT37-43
C121
.01
C120
.01
R49
120
RFC6
0.68µH
T2
12:8, FT37-43
C122
56
C127
680
R53
4.7Ω
R55
33
R56
33
R54
4.7Ω
C128
680
RFC8
10µH
RFC9
10µH
C129
.01
C130
0.1
Z1
Z2
Q7
2SC1969
Q8
2SC1969
T3
T4
2:3:1:1
LPF
(Sh. 3)
R58
180
1/2W
8T
R44
2.7K
R40
470
C118
.01
PRE-DRIVER
(Sh. 3)
Q5
2N5109
R42
4.7Ω
R43
22Ω
C117
0.047
R41
560
Pre-Driver
R48
120
R47
47
Q6
2SC2166
R50
1.5Ω
1/2 W
C131
0.1
C125
22µF
C124
0.1
Driver
Q10
2N7000
8T
R46
270
V BIAS-XFIL
Power Amplifier (PA)
NOTE: WIND T4 2:2:1:1 FOR
BETTER EFFICIENCY AT 5W
(SEE "MODIFICATIONS" SECTION)
PA Bias
8T
R59
4.7K
R61
120
Q13
PN2222A
Q11
PN2222A
C137
100µF
R60
100
PA Bias Set
CCW = MIN BIAS
C138
.047
/CLASS AB
R63
220
R62
2.7K
Elecraft
K2 RF Board
By W. Burdick
E.Swartz
Rev.
B
Date
4/12/00
Sht.
4 of 4

Appendix B



Appendix C BLOCK DIAGRAM

W. Burdick/E. Swartz Rev. C 6-13-99

Appendix E, Troubleshooting

If you have any difficulty with your K2:

- Closely examine all PC boards for poor solder joints and incorrect, broken or missing components.
- Look for your problem in the **Troubleshooting Tables** (below).
- Follow the step-by-step receiver and transmitter **Signal-Tracing** procedures at the end of this section. Also included are complete **DC Voltage Tables** for all ICs and transistors.

Troubleshooting Tables

There are five troubleshooting tables (listed below). Within each table, problems are identified by 3-digit numbers in the ranges shown. In most cases you'll know which table to look in based on the symptoms you observe. If in doubt, start with the General Troubleshooting table.

General Troubleshooting	000-049
Control Circuits	050-099
Receiver	100-149
Transmitter	150-199
Operation and Alignment	200-249

When referring to components on the various K2 boards in the table, we will sometimes use a shorthand form such as "RF-U11," which means U11 on the RF board.

INFO Messages

If you see a message such as **INFO 100** on the LCD, look up the corresponding entry in the troubleshooting tables. **Note**: **INFO** messages can be cleared by pressing any switch. However, the cause of these messages should be investigated before continuing to operate the transceiver.

General Troubleshooting (000-049)

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
000 Unit appears to be completely dead when power switch is turned on (no display, no audio)	▪ Make sure your power supply or battery is connected, turned on, and isn't plugged in backwards ▪ Check power supply and battery fuses if applicable ▪ The K2's internal self-resetting fuse, F1, may have gone into a high-resistance state due to a short from the 12-V line to ground; unplug the power supply and check for such shorts ▪ Examine power cable for shorts or opens ▪ Verify control board is plugged in and that its connectors are fully seated ▪ Check for 12 VDC at the power jack ▪ Make sure speaker, battery, and other internal option connectors are not plugged in backwards ▪ Measure the +5V and +8V regulated power supplies. If either is incorrect, check the regulators (**050**). ▪ Check the MCU (**075**)
003 LCD is dim	▪ Check values of R16 and R15 on the front panel ▪ Check continuity from LCD driver (U1) to LCD. Also look for bent pins on driver.
004 Display turns on but unit still appears functionally dead or is "running slowly"	▪ Check the MCU, Control-U6 (**075**) ▪ Verify that the control and front panel boards are plugged in correctly ▪ The MCU oscillator may be shorted out due to solder flux residue, especially if you used water-soluble flux solder (**030**)
005 No display, but audio is OK	▪ Remove the bottom cover and verify that the front panel connector is properly mated with the RF board ▪ If the front panel is plugged in correctly but the problem still persists, check all LCD voltages and control lines (**060**)

009 LO BATT displayed	▪ S1 on the control board may be in the probe position. Set it to the "12V" position. ▪ Battery voltage may be below 10.5V. Recharge the battery as soon as possible.
010 Battery voltage too low for proper voltage regulation	▪ If you saw INFO 010 on the LCD, your battery voltage is too low (< 8.5V). This usually happens on transmit when your battery is weak. Disconnect the battery from the K2 and measure its voltage; if the battery voltage quickly rises back to 11 or 12V, the K2 may be loading the battery down. But if the battery stays stabilizes at under about 10 V when measured outside of the K2, it has become fully discharged or may be defective. ▪ If you suspect the K2 is pulling the voltage down, tap any button to clear the INFO message then use DISPLAY to show the voltage and current drain. If the current drain is > 200 mA with no signal and the bargraph OFF, something is shorting either the 12V line or one of the regulators (**050**).
011 No audio, but display is OK	▪ Make sure that a working antenna is connected; check antenna switch, tuner, SWR bridge, etc. ▪ See Receiver Troubleshooting (**100**)
012 Display, VFO knob, switches, or potentiometers do not function correctly or are intermittent	▪ Front panel or control board may not be plugged in correctly ▪ Check the MCU (**075**) ▪ Check all regulated supply voltages (**050**) ▪ RP1 or RP2 on the front panel board may be installed backwards.
015 Current drain excessive on receive	▪ Check receive-mode current drain (**140**)
016 Current drain excessive on transmit	▪ Connect the K2 to a known 50 ohm load (preferably a dummy load); if current drain returns to normal, you probably have a mismatched antenna and will have to improve the match or reduce output power ▪ If you have set the power level control significantly above the level that the transmitter is capable of, current may increase significantly; try reducing the power setting or use CAL CUR to set up a current limit ▪ Use voltage/current monitor mode to see if the power supply voltage drops below 11V on transmit; if so, you may be exceeding the capability of your power supply or battery (**025**) ▪ If the supply voltage and antenna impedance are correct, the driver or PA transistors may not be operating efficiently (**150**)
018 Supply voltage drops when K2 is turned on	▪ Use voltage/current monitor mode to see if the receive-mode current drain is too high (**015**) ▪ If voltage drops but current drain is normal, you probably have a power supply problem or a battery that is not fully charged (**025**); review power supply requirements (Specifications)
019 Supply voltage drops too low when transmitter is keyed	▪ Use voltage/current monitor mode to see if transmit-mode current drain is too high (**016**) ▪ If voltage drops but current drain on transmit is normal, you probably have a weak battery or inadequate power supply (**025**)
025 Battery won't charge up to the correct voltage, or discharges too quickly	▪ Batteries must be charged using the right voltage or their usable life will be greatly reduced; if you have the K2 internal battery option, refer to the charging instructions in the option manual ▪ Battery life can be extended by reducing power output and by turning off selected features using the menu; see Operation ▪ Always disable the K2's internal battery using the rear-panel battery on-off switch if you plan to use an external battery or a reduced-voltage power supply that is inadequate for charging purposes
029 Small error in actual vs. displayed frequency	▪ Make sure your 4.000-MHz oscillator (control board, X2) is calibrated. Two methods are provided in the Operation section (Advanced Operating Features).

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
	▪ Make sure the bottom cover is installed when doing **CAL FIL** and **CAL PLL**. Also, if you calibrate at room temperature but operate the radio at much lower or higher temperatures, calibration will be worse. ▪ Re-do **CAL FIL** after calibrating the 4.000–MHz oscillator ▪ Re-do **CAL PLL** on each band after calibrating the 4.000-MHz oscillator ▪ Use **CAL FCTR** with probe on TP1 and tune very slowly through about 10 kHz of VFO range; if you see any sudden jumps of > 50 Hz over this range even after doing CAL PLL, your 12.096-MHz oscillator crystals may be defective (RF, X1/X2).
030 VFO frequency jumps or drifts, or operating frequency appears to be entirely incorrect	▪ You must align both the VCO and BFO using the **CAL PLL** and **CAL FIL** before operating the K2; otherwise the VFO cannot be tuned properly and the synthesizer may not be locked (see Operation as well as RF board Alignment and Test, Part II) ▪ Make sure the supply voltage is above 8.5V at all times or the 8V regulator may not function correctly. ▪ If you used solder with water-soluble flux, you may have conductive paths all over the PC boards. These can cause numerous problems with the VFO, BFO, and logic circuits (anything high impedance). Try cleaning the entire board with hot water and a Q-tip, or follow solder manufacturer's recommendations (except immersion). ▪ If you used **CAL FIL** to change the BFO settings, make sure you placed the BFO on the correct side of the zero-pitch value for each operating mode (see Operation, Filter Settings) ▪ If you tune beyond the lock range of the VCO, the frequency will stop changing and may "hunt" near the end of this range. If you are in a range that the VCO should be capable of tuning, re-check VCO alignment (see RF board Alignment and Test, Part II) ▪ If the displayed frequency is "garbage," see Resetting the Configuration to Defaults in Advanced Operating Features.

Control Circuits (050-099)

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
050 Regulated voltage(s) incorrect	▪ Remove all option boards, since any one of them might be causing a short on a regulated supply line ▪ Make sure that the DC input voltage at J3 is > 8.5 (the minimum voltage needed by the voltage regulators) ▪ If +5V is too low (< 4.5V) go to **052** ▪ If +8V is too low (< 7.5V) go to **053**
051 General problem with control circuits (switches, knobs, display, bargraph, T-R switching)	▪ Check all DC voltages using the voltage tables (later in this section). Start with the control board. ▪ If the problem involves the front panel, measure those voltages next. If the problem is with T-R switching, check the RF board voltages next. You may have RP1 or RP2 on the front panel board installed backwards.
052 +5V too low (< 4.75V)	▪ Remove the front panel to see if it is was pulling the 5V line low. If not, the problem is likely to be on the control board. ▪ Pull the control board out and inspect the entire 5V line looking for heat-damaged components or shorts. The schematic can be used to identify components on the 5V line. ▪ Remove the microprocessor to see if it is loading the 5V line down. ▪ Unsolder the output pin of the 5V regulator and bend it up slightly to break contact with the PC board. If the voltage is still too low measured at the pin, replace the regulator.

053 +8V too low (< 7.5V)

- Inspect the entire 8V path on the RF and control boards. Look for heat-damaged components or solder bridges.
- Unsolder the output pin of the 8V regulator and bend it up slightly to break contact with the PC board. If the voltage is still too low measured at the pin, replace the regulator.
- There are a number of places where you can easily break the 8V line to eliminate parts of the circuit in your search for the problem. One example is RFC16 on the RF board. If you lift one end of this inductor it will disconnect the entire synthesizer from the 8V line.
- A number of circuits have resistors in series with the 8V line, for example R112 in series with the I.F. amplifier (U12). If you measure voltage on both sides of these resistors you may find a circuit that is drawing high current or is shorted. Example: If you measured 7V on one side of R112 and 3V on the other, it would indicate that U12 had a current drain of 180 mA, which is much too high (I = E/R = 4/22 = 0.18).

060 No display on LCD

- If the bar-graph is also not working, check the 5V regulator (**052**)
- Remove the front panel hardware and panel from the front panel PC board and inspect the entire board for shorts or incorrect components. You may have LCD driver U1 in backwards or it may have a bent pin.
- Check the values of R15 and R16 on the bottom of the board; these resistors set the voltage for the LCD itself.
- Re-install the front panel board and turn on the K2. Using a voltmeter, measure the voltages on pins 16 and 17 of front panel connector J1 (ICLK and IDAT). These lines should show DC voltages between 0 and 5V due to data transmission from the microprocessor to the LCD driver. If the voltages are fixed at either 0 V or 5V rather than being somewhere in-between, the MCU may not be functioning (**075**)

065 Relay Problem

- If you suspect a ground short in any relay-controlled circuit (LPF, BPF, VCO) you can simplify debugging by pulling out the control board, then turning power ON and back OFF. This places all relays in the RESET condition (see schematic).
- If you hear no relays on power-up, check the IOC (**080**)

075 Possible MCU problem

- Measure the voltage on pin 32 of the MCU (U6, control board). If it is not 5V, check the 5V regulator (**052**).
- Remove the control board and carefully inspect the microprocessor. Make sure it is not installed backwards, has no bent pins, and is seated firmly in its socket.
- Verify that the MCU oscillator components all have the correct values and are soldered properly, with no shorts (X2, C21, C22).
- Listen for the 4-MHz oscillator signal using another ham-band receiver. If you can't hear the signal, try putting a 1M resistor across X2 on the control board. Also try rotating C22.

080 IOC Problem

- If you saw the message **INFO 080**, the I/O controller (IOC, RF-U1) or other auxBus device did not respond to messages from the main processor (MCU). Turn power OFF and back ON; if you hear some relays switching on power-up, the IOC may be OK, and the problem is likely to be with the AuxBus (**081**)
- If you do not hear any relays switching on power-up, your IOC (RF-U1) may be defective. Inspect U1 carefully to see if you have installed it backwards or if any pins are bent.
- Pull U1 out, check its pins, then re-install it, making sure all pins make good contact with the IC socket. Check the 4-MHz oscillator **(075).**
- Remove the bottom cover and verify that all pins of U1's socket are soldered, as well as those of the 6V regulator (RF-U2), and U1's 4 MHz oscillator (RF-Z5).
- With power ON, check all voltages associated with U1. You should see 6V at pins 1 and 20 at all times, even when the IOC is sleeping (not being accessed by the MCU).

081 AuxBus problem

- You may have an option board installed that is causing a problem with the AuxBus. Try removing each option board and turning power off and back on.
- Verify that R64 is installed (RF board, near U1).
- Check the voltage at pin 1 of the IOC (RF, U1). If it isn't approximately 6V, U2 may be bad (6V regulators).
- Check the voltage at pin 28 of the IOC (RF–U1). It should be between 5 and 6V. If it is zero volts, you probably have a short somewhere on the AuxBus line. Turn power OFF, then measure pin 28 of U1 to ground. If it is a short, pull the control board out to see if the short is on that board.
- If the voltage at pin 28 is between 5V and 6V, try pressing the **BAND+** button a number of times while watching the voltage carefully (use an oscilloscope if possible). The voltage should drop below 5V briefly if the MCU (CTRL-U6) is sending a message to the IOC. If the voltage does not change at all, the MCU itself may not be sending AuxBus messages.
- Check the AuxBus signal at the MCU, pin 40 (CTRL-U6). If you don't see this voltage drop below 5V briefly when the band is changed, the MCU may not be functioning (**075**).

090 EEPROM test #1 failed

091 EEPROM test #2 failed

- If you saw the message **INFO 090** or **INFO 091** on the LCD, one of the EEPROM write tests has failed.
- Check all voltages on the EEPROM (CTRL-U7).
- Remove the control board and inspect U7 and surrounding traces. Verify that U7 is properly soldered.

Receiver (100-149)

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
100 Low (or no) audio output from receiver, or general receiver gain problem	▪ If you hear normal audio output on some bands but not all of them, check the band-pass and low-pass filters and T-R switch (**120**) ▪ Make sure you have headphones or speaker connected and do not have the AF GAIN set at minimum ▪ Check the key jack for a short to ground ▪ Make sure RF GAIN is at maximum ▪ If you have the 160 m/RXANT option board installed, you may have menu entry **RANT** turned ON but no receive antenna connected; this may affect only one band since **RANT** can be set individually for each band. ▪ Peak the band-pass filters if you have not already done so ▪ Check for ground shorts in the LPF and BPF by first resetting all of the relays (**065**) ▪ Turn the AF GAIN to maximum ▪ If you don't hear any "hiss" at the receiver output, troubleshoot the AF amplifier (**110**) ▪ Check the 8V regulated supply voltage and troubleshoot if necessary (**053**) ▪ Measure the 8R line (+8V receive) at the anode of D6 on the RF board. It should be 8V +/- 0.5V. If not, look for a problem in the 8V switching circuitry (control board). ▪ Try using signal tracing (see procedure later in this section)
110 AF amp not working	▪ Use the menu to set a sidetone level of 60 (**ST L 060**). Hold **SPOT**. If you hear a strong tone, the A.F. amplifier itself is probably working; check the mute circuit (CTRL-Q6 and Q7) and trace the volume control lines back to the product detector (RF-U11) ▪ Remove the control board and inspect the entire A.F. amplifier and mute circuit for mis-installed components, shorts, and opens
114 AGC or S-meter not working	▪ If AGC appears to be working but the S-meter isn't, try re-calibrating the meter using **CAL S HI** and **CAL S LO**. If the S-meter is "stuck," you may have an open, short, or incorrect component in the area of U2 on the control board. ▪ Make sure the RF gain control is at maximum ▪ If the AGC and S-meter are both not working, you may have a dead 5.068 MHz oscillator crystal, X1 (control board). Listen for the 2nd harmonic of X1 at about 10.136 MHz while touching a screwdriver blade to pin 7 of U1 (NE602). If you can't hear this signal, try soldering a 22 k resistor from pin 7 to pin 3 on U1 (NE602).
120 Signal loss only on some bands	▪ If you have the 160 m/RXANT option installed, make sure you have menu entry rANT set to OFF, or if it is ON that you have a receive antenna connected ▪ Try peaking the band-pass filters on the affected bands ▪ Inspect all components in the T-R switch area, and check all T-R switch voltages ▪ Trace the signal from band-pass filters back all the way to the antenna using an RF signal generator ▪ Make sure the VCO is oscillating on affected bands by using the frequency counter

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
140 Receiver current drain is too high	▪ If you saw the message **INFO 140**, your receive-mode current drain was measured at over 500 mA during normal operation. Continue with the checks below. ▪ Use DISPLAY to show voltage and current on the LCD. If the current shown is > 300 mA with no incoming signal or > 200 mA with the bargraph turned OFF and no signal, you may have a short or excessive load on the 8V or 8R lines (**053**). ▪ You may have the speaker and/or external speaker jack wired incorrectly. This can place a short across the audio amp output, causing very low audio output (if any) and current as high as 500 to 800 mA.

Transmitter (150-199)

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
150 General Transmitter problem	▪ If power output is too low, go to 155 ▪ If power output slowly increases during key-down, go to 160 ▪ If current drain on transmit is too high for the given power level or you see HI CUR, go to 175 ▪ If the transmitter output power seems to be unstable go to 160 ▪ If the transmitter stops transmitting by itself go to 170 ▪ If the keyer isn't working properly, go to 180 ▪ Use the signal tracing procedure
155 Power output is low or zero	▪ You may have CAL CUR (current limit) set too low; 2.00 A recommended at 10 W ▪ Check power output when using a 50Ω dummy load; if the output is correct on a dummy load but not when using an antenna, your antenna is probably not matched ▪ Install the bottom cover (all six screws) to prevent RF pick-up by low-level circuits ▪ Check all component values in the RF detector; you may have two resistors swapped (R67/R68, R66/R69) or the wrong detector diode (D9, should be 1N5711) ▪ You may have a short in the LPF or BPF; reset all of the relays before trying to look for shorts (**065**) ▪ Examine transformers T1-T4 carefully; these must be wound as indicated in part III of the RF board assembly section (see this section for drawings) ▪ Check all DC voltages in the transmitter (RF board, Q5/Q6/Q7/Q8) as well as the ALC circuitry (control board, U10A and RF board, Q24). ▪ One component that should be checked specifically is R50 (driver), which can open if the driver current goes too high. ▪ Make an RF probe and signal-trace through the transmitter to find where signal is lost (see probe and procedure later in this section) ▪ Check for any components getting hot ▪ Turn the K2 OFF and remove the heat sink; inspect all parts and check for shorts or opens
160 Power output fluctuates	▪ If you stay in key-down (**TUNE**) mode for several seconds, it is normal to see some increase in power; this is due to slow junction heating in the final amplifier transistors. It is not indicative of a problem unless current drain is too high for the given power output. ▪ If power goes up and down significantly during normal keying, you may have a poorly-matched antenna OR you may have power set too high for your battery or power supply to handle; try reducing power to see if it stabilizes ▪ If you have seen a slow (10-20Hz) oscillation superimposed on the transmitter's output signal, it could be due to ALC modulation. Increase the value of R98 (RF board) to the largest size that permits full output on 10 m. ▪ If the transmitter is truly unstable

	(oscillating) even when connected to a 50-Ω load, you may have an incorrect component value or a toroid-winding error; go through the checks at **155** ▪ Make sure none of the diodes in the T-R switch circuits are in backwards
170 Output power drops to zero suddenly	▪ If you have transmit power set too high for your battery or power supply, the supply voltage may drop so low on transmit that it resets the MCU (CTRL-U6) or the I/O controller (RF-U1). Reduce power.
175 Current drain too high on transmit (or **HI CUR** warning)	▪ You may have power set higher than the final amplifier can achieve, resulting in overdrive of all transmitter stages. Try reducing power to see if normal current drain is observed at lower power levels ▪ Damaged PA transistors or other components could cause inefficiency in any stage of the transmitter. Check all DC voltages and components; signal trace if necessarily (**155**)
180 Keyer Problem	▪ If the keyer is stuck at a fixed speed or the sidetone pitch won't change, go into the menu and see what sidetone pitch your have. If it's not in the range of 0.40-0.80 kHz, you may have bad data in the EEPROM. See "Resetting the Configuration to Defaults" in the Advanced Operating Features section. ▪ If the keyer is generally erratic when transmitting and seems to get worse as power is increased, you probably have RF leaking into the keyline. Try bypassing your key with .001 µF capacitors; also try 100 µH RF chokes in series with the paddle and ground connections. ▪ If your antenna is connected directly to the rig with no coax (i.e., internal ATU), the only way to cure RF problems with the keyer and other circuits may be to reduce transmit power, seek a better antenna match, or improve your ground system

Operation and Alignment (200-249)

Problem	Troubleshooting Steps
201 EEPROM initialized	▪ **INFO 201** is an informational message only, not a problem indication. You will see **INFO 201** one time on power-up. The only other time you might see this message is if you install a new version of the firmware that requires a reformat of EEPROM. (In most cases new firmware should not cause an EEPROM reformat, however.)
230 BFO not connected to frequency counter	▪ **INFO 230** is displayed if you try to use **CAL FIL** without the frequency counter connected to the BFO test point (RF-TP2)
231 VCO not connected to frequency counter	▪ **INFO 231** is displayed if you try to use **CAL PLL** without the frequency counter connected to the VCO test point (RF-TP1)
235 PLL ref. oscillator range error	▪ **INFO 235** is displayed if **CAL PLL** cannot complete VFO linearization on the current band due to inadequate PLL reference oscillator range (RF-Q19). This is most likely to happen on 80 or 160 m, but could happen on other bands if there's a problem with this oscillator. ▪ You may have the frequency counter probe on the wrong test point (should be on TP1) ▪ Re-test the PLL reference oscillator using the procedure described under "PLL Reference Oscillator Test" in Part II of the RF board Alignment and Test section. Be sure to only do CAL PLL at an even multiple of 100 kHz, plus a small amount (e.g., 7100.10). ▪ If the PLL reference oscillator range is found to be inadequate, check X1 and X2 for proper value. Also inspect and check component values in the area of Q19. Look for unsoldered pins, incorrect capacitor values, etc.

Signal Tracing

Signal tracing is the primary method by which radio equipment is tested and repaired. You can solve nearly all receiver and transmitter problems yourself by following the steps in this section carefully.

RF Probe

The RF probe shown in Figure 1 converts RF signals to DC so they can be measured using a DMM. The DC readings on your DMM will be approximately equal to the signal voltage in Vrms (root-mean-square).

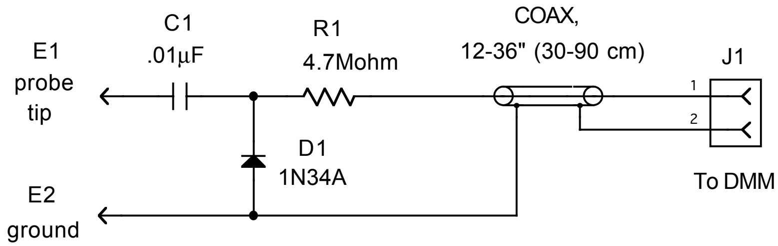


Figure 1

C1, R1, and D1 can be found in the MISCELLANEOUS bag. Use short lead lengths for all components. The probe tip (E1) should be no longer than 3" (see any *ARRL Handbook* for ideas), and you should not touch the tip while taking measurements. Use an alligator clip at E2, with a 4" (13 cm) lead.

Signal Generator

A simple crystal oscillator (Figure 2) can be used in lieu of a signal generator. This oscillator takes its output from the crystal itself, resulting in fairly low harmonic content. This results in very slight "pulling" of the oscillator frequency as you adjust the output level, but this is of no concern for signal tracing. The oscillator will run on voltages as low as 8 V, but 12 V or more is recommended to guarantee enough output for all signal tracing steps. The components are not critical, and can vary 20% with little variation in performance. Nearly any NPN RF transistor will work in the circuit.

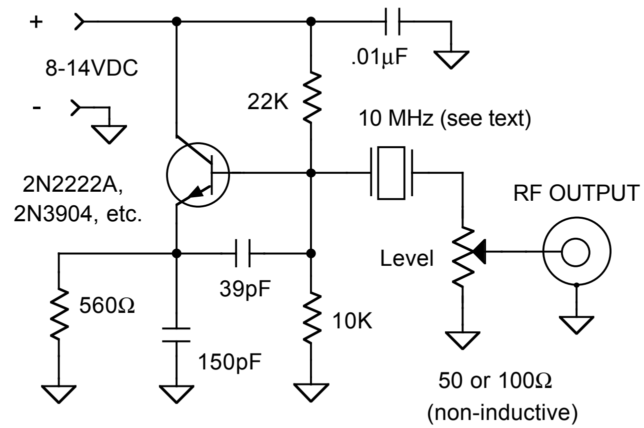


Figure 2

Any crystal frequency that falls in or near a ham band can be used, but 10 MHz is recommended since our signal tracing measurements were done using this band. If you have only completed the K2 up through part II of the RF board (40 m), you'll have to use a crystal in the 6.8 to 7.5 MHz range.

You may wish to build the oscillator into an enclosure fitted with a BNC connector and level control. Use short leads for all wiring. Use very short leads (2") or coax to connect the signal generator to the K2's antenna jack.

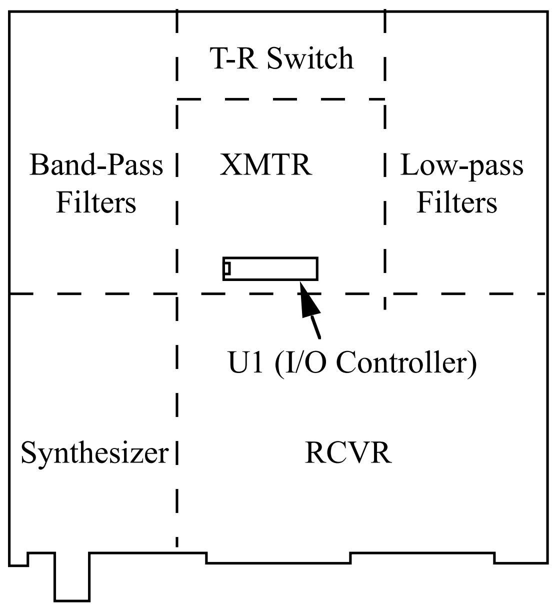


Figure 3

Receiver and Synthesizer

In the following steps you'll use the RF probe and other techniques to find the stage where the received signal is getting attenuated. (Figure 3 shows the approximate location of the synthesizer, receiver, and other circuits on the RF board.) You can then use voltage tables, resistance checks and close examination to find the bad component or connection.

Perform all measurements in the order listed. In general, your measurements can vary 20-25% from those shown and still be acceptable. Space is provided to record your own measurements (in pencil), which will be very useful if you need to re-test a particular circuit after repairs.

Preparation for Receiver Signal Tracing

1. Verify that basic display and control circuits are functioning.
2. Using your DMM, check the 5-V and 8-V regulator outputs.
3. Measure the voltages on the anodes (right end) of D6 and D7 (on the RF board, near the I/O controller, U1). In receive mode, D6's anode should be at about 8 V, and D7's should be near 0 V.
4. Connect the RF probe's output to your DMM's +/- DC input jacks.
5. Select a 2 or 3-V DC range.
6. The DMM should read close to 0.000 V DC. The reading should increase when you touch the RF probe tip with your finger.
7. Turn on the K2 and switch to 30 m (or the appropriate band for your signal generator). Select CW Normal mode.
8. Using the menu, select **OPT PERF.**
9. Use **CAL FIL** to set up CW normal filter FL1 for a bandwidth of **1.00**. If you can hear some noise on your receiver, set up the BFO for this filter as described in the Operation section of the manual. Otherwise, set the BFO to the factory default value.
10. Exit **CAL FIL**, then select the 1.00-bandwidth filter using **XFIL**.

PLL Reference Oscillator and VCO (RF board schematic, sheet 1)

1. Connect the RF probe's ground clip to the ground jumper near the synthesizer circuitry.
2. **Reference Oscillator Output:** Measure the reference oscillator signal at pin 1 of U4 (MC145170), which is near the front-left corner of the RF board (near the control board). Expected: 0.8-1.8 Vrms. Actual: ______.
3. **VCO Output:** Measure the VCO signal at pin 3 of U3 (LT1252). Expected: 0.30-0.40 Vrms. Actual: ______. If this signal is zero, you may have the secondary winding of T5 reversed.
4. **VCO Buffer Output:** Measure the signal on pin 6 of U3. Expected: 0.60-0.75Vrms. Actual: ______.
5. Check the VCO frequency (RF Board, Alignment and Test Part II).

BFO (RF, sheet 2)

1. **BFO Output:** Measure the signal on U11, pin 6 (NE602). Expected: 0.20-0.70 Vrms. Actual: ______.
2. Use the menu to select **CAL FCTR**. Press EDIT again to confirm; the display will now show a frequency reading (it will depend on where you have the frequency counter probe connected).
3. **BFO Buffer Output:** Measure the amplitude of the signal at TP2 using the RF probe. Expected: 0.025-0.070 Vrms. Actual: _______.
4. Exit **CAL FCTR**. Check the BFO frequency (RF Board, Alignment and Test Part II).

Low-Pass Filter, Bandpass Filter, and T-R Switch (RF, sheet 3)

1. Turn both the attenuator and preamp OFF using **PRE/ATT**.
2. Set RF GAIN to minimum.
3. Set AF GAIN to about 10% and connect a pair of headphones.
4. Switch to the 30 m (or the correct band for your signal generator).
5. Connect a signal generator or test oscillator to the antenna jack. Set the signal generator for 0.14 Vrms as indicated by the RF probe.
6. If possible, tune the VFO until you hear the signal. It may be quite strong even if your receiver is attenuating the signal somewhere. Find the approximate signal peak by ear. Set AF GAIN to minimum.
7. Align the band-pass filter for the current band if possible: (a) Put the RF probe on the banded end (cathode) of D6 (to the left of the I/O controller, U1); (b) adjust the band-pass filter for the current band for a peak indication on the DMM (on 30 m: adjust L8 and L9).
8. Aligning the band-pass filter may have changed the input impedance of the receiver. Put the RF probe back on the antenna input and adjust the signal generator for 0.14 Vrms again.
9. **Low-Pass Filter Output:** Measure the signal at jumper W1, near the PA transistors (Q7/Q8). Expected: 0.13 Vrms. Actual: _______.
10. **T-R Switch #1 Output:** Measure the signal at W6, which is just to the right of the transverter option connector, J13 (near the back edge of the board). Expected: .093 Vrms. Actual: _______.
11. **Band-Pass Filter Output:** Measure the signal at the left side of D6. Expected: .086 Vrms. Actual: ______.
12. **T-R Switch #2 Output:** Measure the signal at the right side of D6. Expected: .077 Vrms. Actual: ______.

Mixer, I.F. Amplifiers, and Crystal Filter (sheet 2)

1. **Attenuator Off Test:** Measure the signal at the end of R72 closest to Q21. Expected: .077 Vrms. Actual: _____.
2. **Preamp Off Test:** Measure the signal at the end of R73 closest to Z6. Expected: .077 Vrms. Actual: _____. (Preamp gain will be tested later.)
3. **Composite Mixer Output:** Measure the signal at the right end of R80. Expected: .079 Vrms. Actual: _____.
4. **Post-Mixer Amp Output:** Measure the signal at the case (collector) of Q22 (2N5109). Expected: 2.20 Vrms. Actual: _____.
5. **-5 dB Pad Output:** Measure the signal at jumper W2, near the crystal filter. Expected: 1.40 Vrms. Actual: _____.
6. **Crystal Filter Output:** Touch the RF probe to jumper W3, near the crystal filter. Adjust the VFO for a peak in the DMM reading. Expected: 0.35 Vrms. Actual: _____. If this reading is low, it may be due to a non-optimal setting of the BFO in CAL FIL. Try a different BFO setting, then adjust the VFO for peak again and re-measure the filter loss. (Note: this measurement exaggerates the filter loss because the *input* to the filter is a composite of many signals besides the desired one.)
7. **T7 Step-Up Ratio:** Measure the signal at U12, pin 4 (MC1350). Expected: 1.36 Vrms. Actual: _____.
8. **I.F. Amp Saturated Output:** Measure the signal at U12, pin 8. It may be anywhere between 0.00 and 0.30 Vrms. Adjust the signal generator level until the DMM reads approx. 0.15 Vrms. (If your signal generator is running from a 9-V battery you may have trouble getting the output this high. Try running the generator from 12V or more in this case.)
9. **2nd Crystal Filter Output:** Measure the signal at U11, pin 1 (NE602). Expected: approx. 0.27 Vrms. Actual: _____.
10. **Product Detector Saturated Output:** Measure the signal at U11, pin 5 (NE602). Expected: 0.58 Vrms. Actual: _____.

AGC (Control Board)

1. Disconnect the RF probe from the DMM. Connect the DMM's (-) lead to chassis ground.
2. Turn the signal generator completely OFF (remove its power).
3. Set RF GAIN to maximum.
4. **No-Signal AGC, Max. IF Gain:** Measure the DC voltage on pin 1 of U2 (LM833). Expected: 3.6 V. Actual: _____.
5. Set RF GAIN to minimum.

6. **No-Signal AGC, Min. IF Gain:** Measure the DC voltage on pin 1 of U2. Expected: 4.6 V. Actual: _____.
7. Turn the signal generator back on.
8. **AGC @ Saturation:** Measure the DC voltage on pin 1 of U2. Expected: 6.9 V. Actual: _____. Adjust the VFO to make sure this voltage is at its peak.
9. **I.F. Amp AGC Input:** Measure the DC voltage on pin 5 of U12 (RF, sheet 2). Expected: 5.0 V. Actual: _____.

Product Detector and AF Amp (RF, Sheet 2)

1. Set up the DMM to read AC volts (use a 2 or 3-V meter range).
2. Touch the (+) lead of the DMM to pin 5 of U11 (NE602). Decrease the signal generator level until the AC voltage at pin 5 reads .025 Vrms. (The K2's RF GAIN control should still be at minimum.)
3. Disconnect the headphones and speaker. Turn the AF GAIN control to maximum.
4. Measure the signal at the speaker jack, P5 pin 1 (near the on/off switch, S1). Expected: 1.6 Vrms. Actual: _____.

I.F. Amp Noise Gain (RF, sheet 2)

1. Turn the signal generator off and disconnect it from the antenna jack. Connect a 50-ohm dummy load.
2. Turn off all nearby equipment (especially computers or signal sources).
3. Set AF GAIN to maximum. Set RF GAIN to minimum.
4. Make sure the preamp and attenuator are both OFF.
5. Verify that FL1 is selected (bandwidth = 1.00), as well as CW Normal mode.
6. **AF Output, Min. IF gain:** Setup the DMM for its lowest AC volts range. Measure the signal at the speaker jack, P5 (near the on/off switch, S1). Expected: 0.000-0.001 Vrms. Actual: _____.
7. **AF Output, Max. IF gain:** Set RF GAIN to maximum. Measure the signal at P5, pin 1. Expected: 0.007-0.013 Vrms. Actual: _____.
8. **Preamp Noise Gain:** Turn on the preamp. Measure the signal at P5. Expected: 0.030-0.060 Vrms. Actual: _____.
9. **Noise Increase w/Antenna:** Connect an antenna. The signal at P5 should increase substantially even if atmospheric conditions are quiet. A typical reading on 30 or 40 m is 0.20-0.40 Vrms. In general, the longer or higher your antenna is, the greater the noise increase will be.

Final Steps

If you have completed receiver signal tracing and any necessary repairs, you should then do the following:

1. Re-install the bottom cover and heat sink.
2. Re-do calibration of the VCO, BFO, band-pass filters, crystal filters, etc. as needed (see RF Board Alignment and Test, parts I, II, and III). If you peaked L8 and L9 when signal tracing through the 30-m band-pass filter, you'll need to re-peak C21 and C23 on 20 m.
3. Leave the frequency counter cable connected to TP2 (BFO)
4. Connect the speaker and re-install the top cover.

Transmitter

The following procedure can be used to isolate problems with the transmitter (the transmitter area of the RF board is identified in Figure 3). CW mode is used for these tests. If you're having difficulty with the SSB adapter, make sure the transmitter works on CW first, then proceed with the signal tracing instructions in the SSB adapter manual.

Once you find a location where the signal appears to be much lower than expected, stop signal tracing and check that circuit. Check all component values and DC voltages (see DC Voltage Tables). Closely examine the PC board for unsolder pins and solder bridges. One of most likely causes of a transmitter problem is a poorly-soldered toroid lead. Re-heat any suspect leads or solder joints.

Preparation for Transmitter Signal Tracing

1. Make sure basic display and control circuits are functioning before attempting transmitter testing.
2. Remove the SSB adapter (if installed) and install temporary jumpers at J9 and J10. Temporarily re-install C167 (.001 µF or higher) between pins 7 and 12 of J11. (See RF board, sheet 2.)
3. **12 V supply check:** Use your DMM to check the DC voltage at the cathode (banded end) of D10 (right edge of the board). Expected: 9 to 14 V. Actual: _____. Verify that the same voltage (or slightly lower) can be found on the case (collector) of Q5 and the tab (collector) of Q6 when the K2 is turned on and is in receive mode.

4. If you don't have an RF probe, you can build the one from Figure 1. **Note:** do not use the RF probe to directly measure the transmitter's power output unless you have the power set for 2 W or less. The 1N34A diode in the RF probe may be damaged at higher power levels.
5. **Test Shared Circuits:** Do the *receiver* signal tracing (above). This tests a number of circuits that are shared by both transmitter and receiver, including the VCO, BFO, BFO buffer, T-R switches, band-pass filters, and low-pass filters. **It's important not to skip this step,** even if the receiver seems to be working correctly. Shared circuits that are working marginally may affect the transmitter more than the receiver, so their actual output levels must be measured.
6. Set up the K2 for 40 meters (about 7100 kHz), CW Normal mode.
7. Plug in a 50-ohm dummy load (10-W or higher rating).
8. Set the power level to 5 watts.
9. Connect a hand key or keyer paddle to the key jack.
10. Connect a speaker or headphones.
11. Use the menu to set **ST L** 030, **ST P** 0.50, and **T-R** 0.05.
12. Select hand key mode (**INP HAND**).
13. Set up a transmit current limit of 2.50 amps using **CAL CUR**.

Basic voltage checks (RF schematic, sheet 2)

Note: When using **TUNE** to key the transmitter, be sure to tap **TUNE** again within 5 seconds or less each time. This will reduce the chance of damaging any components in the transmitter that are consuming excess power.

1. Switch to voltage/current display mode using **DISPLAY**.
2. Hold **TUNE** to key the transmitter, and verify that supply voltage does not drop by more than about 0.8 V. If it drops more than this, either your power supply is inadequate or the transmitter is drawing excess current. Actual transmit-mode voltage: _____ V. Current: _____ A.
3. Return to normal display mode using **DISPLAY**.
4. Measure the key-down DC voltages on the anodes (right end) of D6 and D7 (near U1, the I/O controller). During transmit, the voltage on the anode of D7 should be about 8 V, and on D6, near 0 V. Actual TX-mode voltages, D6: _____ V; D7: _____ V.
5. Use **TUNE** and note the actual power output: _____ W.

Sidetone (Control Board)

Note: If the sidetone is already functioning correctly, you can skip this section.

1. Make sure you're in CW mode. The sidetone will not function in SSB modes.
2. Disconnect the headphones and speaker.
3. Use the menu to set **ST L** to 255 (maximum sidetone level).
4. Use the **VOX** button to select CW TEST mode (the mode letter will then flash). This is a safe setting for sidetone tests, since there is no power output.
5. Set your DMM for AC volts, 2 or 3-V range. Touch the positive lead of the DMM to pin 25 of U6 on the control board (16C77). (This is the source of the sidetone signal.)
6. Key the transmitter using the hand key (**TUNE** does not activate the sidetone). Measure the AC voltage on pin 25 of U6. Expected: 2.5 Vrms. Actual: _____. Un-key the transmitter.
7. Move the DMM probe to the drain of Q5 (control board, 2N7000). Key the transmitter and measure the AC drain voltage. Expected: 2.4 Vrms. Actual: _____. If this is zero, either Q5 is defective or there is no drain voltage supply from pin 1 of U8 (MAX534, D-to-A converter).
8. Measure the AC voltage on pin 7 of U10 (LMC660). Expected: 0.5 Vrms. Actual: _____.
9. Measure the AC voltage on pin 8 of U9 (LM380). Expected: 0.5 Vrms. Actual: _____.
10. Measure the AC voltage on pin 6 of U9. Expected: 0.5 Vrms. Actual: _____. This signal should also be present on the speaker jack, P5 pin 1 (RF board).
11. Return the **ST L** setting to 030.
12. Use the **VOX** button to put the transmitter back into **OPERate** mode.

ALC (control board)

1. Make sure the POWER control is set for 5 watts, and that you're in CW/Operate mode.
2. Set up the DMM for DC volts, 20 or 30-V range.
3. **Power Control Test (VPWR line):** The VPWR line, pin 2 of U8 (MAX534), is where transmit power control begins. On key-down, the microprocessor (U6) starts increasing the voltage on VPWR until it sees the desired power indication from the RF output detector (RF board,

sheet 3, lower right-hand corner). To test VPWR, set the DMM for DC volts, then measure the DC voltage on pin 2 of U8 when TUNE is pressed. Expected: 0.7-2.5 VDC. Actual: _____.

4. **If VPWR reading is high (> 4.5 V):** The ALC software will set VPWR to its highest level (about 5 V) if the transmitter cannot be driven to the requested power level. This happens for one of two reasons: (a) the transmitter gain is low (or transmitter isn't working at all); (b) the RF detector has an incorrect component. Check all component values in the RF detector. If you can't find a problem with the RF detector, continue with the next signal tracing section (transmit mixer, etc.).
5. **If VPWR reading is low (< 0.4V):** VPWR can be too low because: (a) the ALC software is being "fooled" by a signal from the RF detector that says the power is higher than it really is; (b) because U8 on the control board is defective or has a pin shorted to ground or not soldered. Check all component values in the RF detector (RF, sheet 3). If these appear correct, check DC voltages on U8 (control), as well as resistance to ground on all pins.

Transmit Mixer, Buffer, Band-Pass Filter, T-R Switch (RF, sheets 2-3)

Note: The measurements in this section and the next may vary widely, especially if you do the measurements on a band other than 40 m. However, the *ratio* between any two back-to-back measurements should remain fairly constant, and is a good indication of gain or loss of a stage in the transmitter. For example, the ratio of measurements in steps 3 and 2 below is about 12.

1. Connect the RF probe to the DMM. Set the DMM for a 2 or 3-V DC volts range.
2. **Xmit Mixer Output:** Measure the key-down signal at U10, pin 4. Expected: 0.016 Vrms. Actual: _____.
3. **Buffer Output:** Measure the key-down signal at U9, pin 6 (LT1252). Expected: 0.200 Vrms. Actual: _____.
4. **Band-Pass Filter Output:** Measure the key-down signal at W6. Expected: 0.030 Vrms. Actual: _____.
5. **T-R Switch #1 Output:** Measure the key-down signal at the anode of D1. Expected: 0.029 Vrms. Actual: _____.

Pre-driver, Driver, and PA (RF, sheet 4)

1. **Pre-Driver Output:** Measure the key-down signal at the case (collector) of Q5 (2N5109). Expected: 0.120 Vrms. Actual: _____.
2. **Driver Input:** Measure the key-down signal on the base of Q6 (2SC2166; pins are labeled *B*, *C*, *E*). Expected: 0.026 Vrms. Actual: _____.
3. **Driver Output:** Measure the key-down signal at the tab (collector) of Q6. Expected: 1.8 Vrms. Actual: _____.
4. **PA Input (Q7):** Measure the key-down signal at the base of Q7 (2SC1969 on bottom of the board; pins are labeled on the top). Expected: 0.38 Vrms. Actual: _____.
5. **PA Input (Q8):** Measure the key-down signal at the base of Q8. Expected: 0.38 Vrms. Actual: _____.
6. **RF Detector Input:** Measure the key-down signal on the anode (non-banded end) of D9 (1N5711, middle of the right edge of the board). Expected: 2.0 Vrms. Actual: _____. (This voltage should be fairly constant regardless of the band used.)
7. **PA Transistor Tests:** If the PA input voltages were higher than expected, but the RF detector input was too low, one or both PA transistors could be defective. After checking DC voltages and transformer leads, turn off power to the K2 and use your DMM's diode/transistor test range to test the transistors. With the DMM's positive lead on the base of Q7, you should measure about 0.6 k to the emitter or collector. With the DMM's negative lead on the base of Q7, you should measure about 1.3 k to the emitter and > 3 k to the collector. These also apply to Q8.

DC Voltage Tables

The tables on the following pages provide DC voltages for all ICs and transistors on each of the three boards, as well as the diodes in the T-R switch (RF board). Typically, your readings will match these within 10%.The voltages were measured using a high-impedance DMM (10-11 Megohm). The K2's internal voltmeter can also be used for most measurements.

Receive-mode voltages are listed except as noted. Most of the Control board measurements were made with the Front Panel module removed for easier access. Exceptions are indicated by (**).

Equipment Setup: Supply voltage 14.0 V; no antenna; LCD = NITE; GRPH = DOT; receive mode; no headphones or speaker connected; RF GAIN mid-range; AF GAIN minimum; OFFSET mid-range.

CONTROL BOARD (Front panel removed unless noted; * = approximate and/or may fluctuate; ** = CAL FCTR mode, front Panel plugged in)

Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC
Q1	E	8.0	Q12	E	6.3	U6	1	5.0	U6	34	0.0	U9	1	0.4*			
	B	8.0		B	7.0		2	0.0*		35	0.2*		2	.02*			
	C	0.0		C	8.0		3	5.0*		36	0.8*		3	.02*			
Q2	E	8.0	U1	1	1.4		4	0.2*		37	5.0		4	0.0			
	B	7.3		2	1.4		5	2.6*		38	1.2*		5	0.0			
	C	7.5		3	0.0		6	4.7*		39	0.2*		6	6.7			
Q3	S	0.0		4	6.9		7	0-5*		40	5.5		7	13.7			
	G	0.0		5	6.9		8	0-5*	U7	1	5.0		8	6.8			
	D	8.0		6	8.0		9	0 or 5		2	5.0	U10	1	7.7*			
Q4	S	0.0		7	7.5		10	5.0**		3	5.0		2	5.0*			
	G	5.0		8	8.0		11	5.0		4	0.0		3	5.0*			
	D	0.0	U2	1	6.9		12	0.0		5	5.0		4	8.0			
Q5	S	0.0		2	6.9		13	2.3*		6	0.0		5	5.0			
	G	0 or 5		3	6.9		14	2.4*		7	5.0		6	5.0			
	D	0-5		4	0.0		15	2**		8	5.0		7	5.0			
Q6	G	2.7*		5	7.3		16	0-5*	U8	1	0-5*		8	0-8*			
	S	5-6*		6	7.3		17	2.7*		2	5.0**		9	0-8*			
	D	5-6*		7	7.3		18	0.0		3	5.0		10	0-8*			
Q7	G	2.7*		8	8.0		19	5.0		4	0.0		11	0.0			
	S	5-6*	U3	1	0.4*		20	5.0		5	0.0		12	0-8*			
	D	5-6*		2	13.7		21	5.0		6	5.0		13	0-8*			
Q8	E	7.0**		3	13.7		22	5.0		7	5.0		14	0-8			
	B	7.7**		4	0.0		23	5.0		8	0 or 5						
	C	8.0**		5	2.5		24	5.0		9	5.0						
Q9	E	0.0		6	2.5		25	0.0		10	0.0						
	B	0.7**		7	2.5		26	5.0		11	5.0						
	C	2 **		8	13.7		27	0.0		12	0.0						
Q10	E	0.0	U4	IN	13.7		28	5.0		13	5.0						
	B	0.7**		GND	0.0		29	5.0		14	0.0						
	C	2**		OUT	8.0		30	5.0		15	0-5*						
Q11	E	0.2*	U5	IN	13.7		31	0.0		16	0-5*						
	B	0.9*		GND	0.0		32	5.0									
	C	13.5		OUT	5.0		33	5.0									

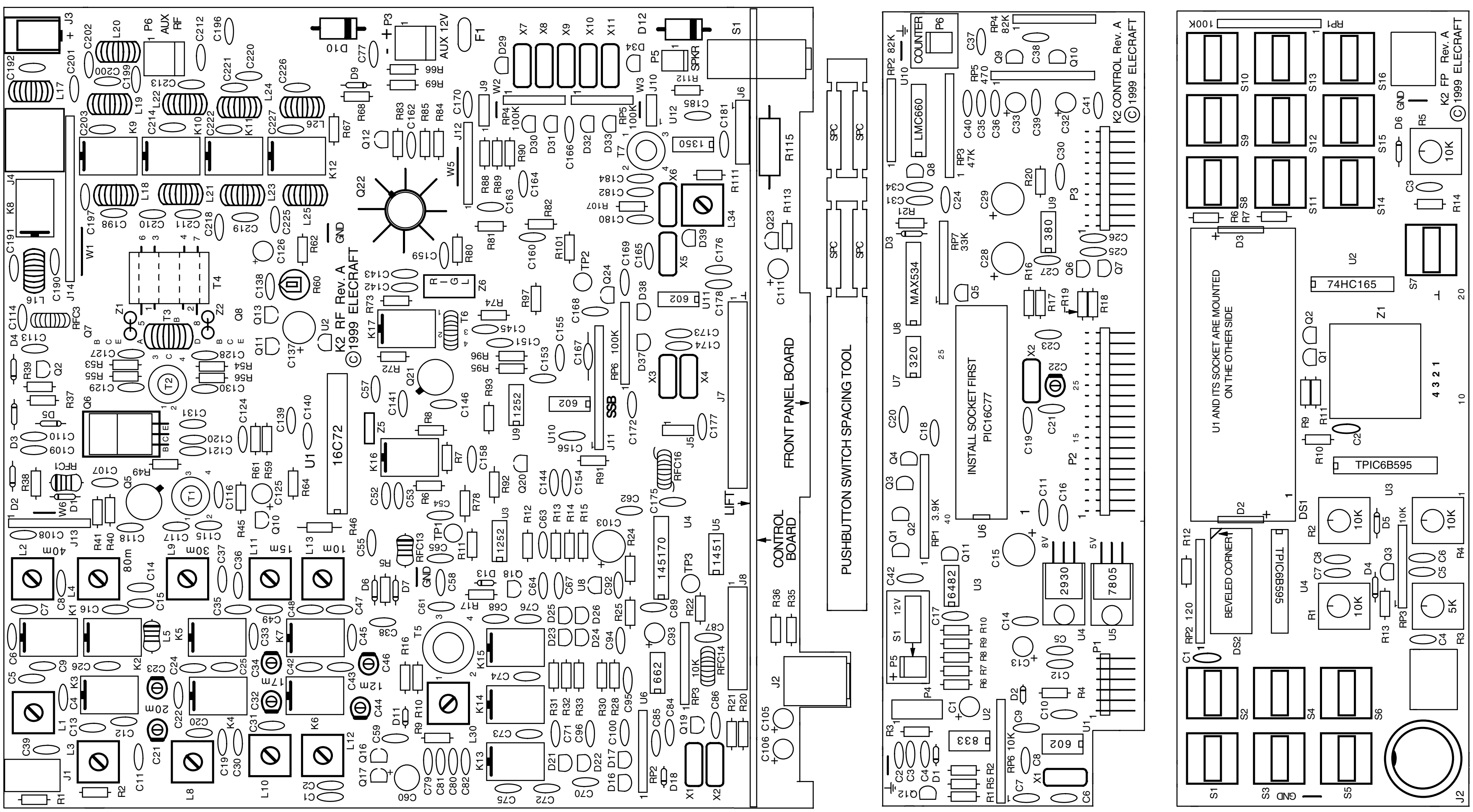
FRONT-PANEL BOARD (* = approximate and/or may fluctuate; ** = not accessible due to LCD)

Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC
Q1	E	2.7	U1	26	3.5	U3	1	0.0	U4	15	0.0						
	B	3.4		27	3.5		2	5.0		16	0.0						
	C	5.0		28	3.5		3	0.8*		17	0.0						
Q2	E	2.7		29	3.5		4	> 0		18	0.4*						
	B	3.4		30	3.5		5	> 0		19	0.0						
	C	5.0		31	3.5		6	4.0*		20	0.0						
				32	3.5		7	2.0*									
				33	3.5		8	5.0									
				34	3.5		9	0.0									
U1	1	**		35	3.5		10	0.0									
	2	**		36	3.5		11	0.0									
	3	**		37	3.5		12	.02*									
	4	**		38	3.5		13	0.2*									
	5	**		39	3.5		14	3.1*									
	6	**		40	3.5		15	0.8*									
	7	**	U2	1	5.0		16	4.0*									
	8	**		2	0.2*		17	0.1									
	9	**		3	5.0		18	3.6*									
	10	**		4	5.0		19	0.0									
	11	**		5	5.0		20	0.0									
	12	**		6	5.0	U4	1	0.0									
	13	**		7	5.0		2	5.0									
	14	**		8	0.0		3	3.6*									
	15	**		9	0.1*		4	> 0									
	16	**		10	0.0		5	> 0									
	17	**		11	5.0		6	> 0									
	18	**		12	5.0		7	> 0									
	19	**		13	5.0		8	5.0									
	20	**		14	5.0		9	0.0									
	21	3.5		15	0.0		10	0.0									
	22	3.5		16	5.0		11	0.0									
	23	3.5					12	.02*									
	24	3.5					13	0.2*									
	25	3.5					14	0.0									

RF BOARD (Shaded areas indicate transmit-mode voltage measurements)

Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC	Ref.	Pin	VDC
D1	A	0.0	Q12	S	0.0	U1	1	6.0	U3	6	4.3	U8	IN	8.0			
	C	7.5		G	6.0		2	6.0		7	8.0		GND	0.0			
D2	A	8.0		D	0.0		3	0.0		8	0.0		OUT	5.0			
	C	7.5	Q13	E	0.6		4	0.0	U4	1	2.1	U9	1	0.0			
D3	A	8.0		B	1.3		5	0.0		2	2.4		2	6.9			
	C	7.5		C	7.5		6	0.0		3	0.0		3	6.9			
D4	A	8.0	Q16	E	0.0		7	0.0		4	2.3		4	0.0			
	C	7.5		B	0.6		8	0.0		5	5.0		5	0.0			
D5	A	0.0		C	2.2		9	0.2		6	5.0		6	6.9			
	C	8.0	Q17	S	0.0		10	0.15		7	0.0		7	13.8			
D6	A	8.0		G	2.2		11	0.0		8	0.1		8	0.0			
	C	7.5		D	2 to 3		12	0.0		9	0.0	U10	1	1.4			
D7	A	0.0	Q18	G	-1.0		13	0.0		10	0.0		2	1.4			
	C	7.5		S	2 to 3		14	0.0		11	0.0		3	0.0			
Q2	S	0.0		D	6.3		15	0.0		12	0.0		4	5.0			
	G	8.0	Q19	G	0.0		16	0.0		13	4.0		5	5.0			
	D	0.0		S	0.8		17	0.0		14	5.0		6	6.0			
Q5	E	0.6		D	8.0		18	6.0		15	5.0		7	5.5			
	B	1.3	Q20	S	0.0		19	0.0		16	5.0		8	6.1			
	C	12.4		G	8.0		20	6.0	U5	1	0.0	U11	1	1.4			
Q6	B	1.1		D	0.0		21	0.0		2	5.0		2	1.4			
	C	13.3	Q21	E	1.6		22	0.0		3	5.0		3	0.0			
	E	0.4		B	2.3		23	0.0		4	5.0		4	5.0			
Q7	B	0.6		C	13.2		24	0.0		5	0.0		5	5.0			
	C	13.4	Q22	E	1.3		25	0.0		6	2.0		6	6.1			
	E	0.0		B	2.0		26	0.0		7	0 to 4		7	5.6			
Q8	B	0.6		C	12.5		27	0.0		8	5.0		8	6.1			
	C	13.4	Q23	S	0.0		28	5.5	U6	1	0 to 8	U12	1	7.9			
	E	0.0		G	0.0	U2	IN	13.7		2	0 to 4		2	7.9			
Q10	S	1.6		D	8.0		GND	0.0		3	0 to 4		3	0.0			
	G	8.1	Q24	G	0.0		OUT	6.0		4	0.0		4	2.5			
	D	1.6		S	1.2	U3	1	0.0		5	4.0		5	3.9			
Q11	E	0.0		D	1.3		2	4.3		6	4.0		6	2.5			
	B	0.6					3	4.1		7	0 to 8		7	0.0			
	C	1.3					4	0.0		8	8.0		8	7.9			
							5	0.0									

Appendix F Parts Placement Drawing, Top



Appendix F Parts Placement Drawing, Bottom